

505

英語動詞時候用法

HOW TO USE

THE TENSES OF VERBS

MG
H314.2
8

英語動詞時候用法
HOW TO USE
THE TENSES OF VERBS

BY
YA YU CHENG
陳亞漁編著

FORMERLY INSTRUCTOR IN ENGLISH NINGPO TECHNICAL COLLEGE,
NINGPO, AND CHING CHONG HIGH SCHOOL, SHANGHAI

THE COMMERCIAL PRESS, LIMITED
SHANGHAI, CHINA
1935



3 2167 9377 2

序 言

“時候”爲英文動詞重要變化之一。種類繁多，構造互異，用法亦復各不相同，初習英文者對之每感其頭緒紛繁，瞭解不易，意義複雜，領悟爲難。一至應用，往往錯誤百出，非公式錯配，犯文不合法之弊，卽時候誤用，患辭不對意之病。細究其故，雖有多端，而無適當補充讀物，足資初學者之研討，實爲主要之原因。蓋普通文法教本，於各種時候之解釋，類皆略而不詳，學者輒苦無從明其意義，辨其用法。此外欲求一種善本，可供自修參考者，又若鳳毛麟角。編者有鑒於斯，爰輯此編，冀初學者讀之，能明瞭各種時候之準確意義及其運用之道也。

本編共分十八章，舉凡各語氣所有各種時候，大致已經搜羅殆盡，各按其構造公式，意義真諦，用法要訣作有系統的敘述，透徹的說明。凡有意義相近似者，亦經比較其異同，辨別其用法。至初學者素視爲難用易誤之“未來時候，”“現在完了時候，”“假設語氣各時候，”其解釋更爲透徹詳盡。所設例句，大都附以詳細註解，俾與本文可資參證。學者苟能循序讀之，於動詞各時候之運用，自能收得心應手之效也。

本編採用暨參考諸書，不下十餘種，以書目冗長，不克一一列舉。惟齋藤秀三郎之實用英文典，斷山岐眞之自修新英文典，崗田之英文法要訣，Nesfield之英文典，Alfred West之新英文典等書，採用較多，特誌之於此，以示謝意。

二十三年八月編者謹識

CONTENTS 目 錄

	PAGE
第一章...總論	1-2
時候之意義	1
時候之重要	2
第二章...時候之分類	2-3
時候之分類	2
時候之三期	3
第三章...時候之構造	4-9
時候之構造	4
動詞之基本形	5
原形動詞之用途	5
過去形動詞之用途及來源	7
過去分詞之用途及來源	8
基本形用法摘要	9
第四章...過去時候與過去分詞之作法	10-19
動詞之種類	10
規則動詞過去時候與過去分詞之作法	10
不規則動詞過去時候與過去分詞之作法	13
第五章...助動詞	19-22
助動詞之種類	19
助動詞與原形動詞及分詞相結合圖	21
助動詞位置之順序	21
第六章...語氣	22-23
研究時候之方法	22
語氣之定義	22
語氣之種類	22

	PAGE
第七章...實敘語氣動詞各時候之構造	23-31
實敘語氣動詞時候之總數	23
現在時候之構造	24
過去時候之構造	25
未來時候之構造	25
完了時候之一般形式	26
“To Have”之變化	26
現在完了時候之構造	27
過去完了時候之構造	27
未來完了時候之構造	27
進行時候之一般形式	28
“To Be”之變化	28
現在進行時候之構造	29
過去進行時候之構造	29
未來進行時候之構造	29
現在完了進行時候之構造	30
過去完了進行時候之構造	30
未來完了進行時候之構造	31
第八章...動詞受動態各時候之構造	32-36
動詞受動態各時候之一般形式	32
動詞受動態各時候之構造	32
受動態進行時候之公式	34
第九章...簡單式各時候之用法	37-70
簡單式各時候之意義	37
簡單式各時候用法之通則	37
現在時候之用法	37-40
現在時候之意義	37
現在時候之主要用途	38
一般真理	38
習慣動作	39
現在時候之其他用途	40-44
現在時候替代過去時候	40
現在時候替代未來時候	41
現在時候替代現在完了時候	43

	PAGE
現在時候替代未來完了時候	43
過去時候之用法	44-47
過去時候之意義	44
過去時候之確定	45
過去時候之誤用	45
過去習慣動作表示法	46
過去時候替代過去進行時候	47
未來時候之用法	47-50
未來時候之意義	47
未來時候之起源	48
未來動作之種類	48
無意志未來	51-54
“I shall,” “You will,” “He will” 之意義 ...	51
“I will,” “You will,” “He will” 之意義 ...	53
意志未來	54-58
“I will” 之意義	54
“You shall,” “He shall” 之意義	55
未來與非未來	58
疑問句中之 “Shall” and “Will”	59-64
未來動作之種類	59
“Shall you?” “Shall I?” “Will he?” 之意義	60
“Will you?” 之意義	61
“Shall I?” 之意義	63
“Shall he?” 之意義	64
表示未來之其他方法	65-66
不用 “Shall,” “Will” 表示未來法	65
過去之未來	66-70
過去之未來之構造與意義	66
過去之未來之用途	67
過去之未來動作之種類	67
未來時候用法簡表	69
第十章...完了式各時候之用法	70-104
完了式各時候之意義	70
完了式各時候用法之通則	70

	PAGE
現在完了時候之用法	71-92
現在完了時候之意義	71
現在完了時候意義之解釋	72
現在完了時候與過去時候之比較	72
現在完了係屬於現在的非過去的之證明	74
現在完了時候不得與過去的事物相共	75
現在完了時候應用時之注意	75
現在完了時候所遺之二種結果	75
近的結果之意義	76
遠的結果之意義	76
二種結果辨別法	77
現在完了時候表示狀態之繼續	79
有繼續性意義動詞表示經驗	80
表繼續之現在完了時候替代過去時候	81
成行動詞用於現在完了時候者	82
處分動詞用於現在完了時候者	83
現在完了時候之正用法	84
“Have gone” 與 “Be gone”	87
“Have been” 之意義... ..	88
“Have gone” 與 “Have come” 之用法	89
“Have gone” 與 “Have come” 應用時之注意	89
“Have been ⁱⁿ ” 與 “Have been to” 之意義	91
“Have been” + Infinitive 之意義	92
現在完了時候用法簡表... ..	92
過去完了時候之用法	93-102
過去完了時候與現在完了時候之比較... ..	93
過去完了時候之普通用途	94
過去完了時候之主要用途	95
二重過去	95
二重過去之說明	96
先前過去	97
先前過去應用之條件	97
先前過去用法圖	98
表示 “Priority” 之其他方法	98

	PAGE
對主要動作表原因或說明的關係	100
表事物在後的動作時之狀態	101
過去完了時候用法之結論	101
過去完了時候用法簡表	102
未來完了時候之用法	102-104
未來完了時候之用途	103
現在完了時候替代未來完了時候	104
現在時候替代未來完了時候	104
第十一章...進行式各時候之用法	105-116
進行式各時候之意義	105
進行式各時候用法之通則	105
無進行時候之動詞	105
無進行時候動詞表	106
無進行時候動詞用於特殊意義者	109
“See”與“Look,”“Hear”與“Listen”之 區別	110
現在進行時候之用法	111-114
現在進行時候之意義	111
現在進行時候與簡單式現在時候之比較	112
現在進行時候表示動作開始之意	113
現在進行時候替代未來時候	113
現在進行時候表示習慣動作	113
過去進行時候之用法	114-115
過去進行時候之意義	114
過去進行時候表示“加重語勢”與“繼續”	115
未來進行時候之用法	115-116
未來進行時候之意義	116
第十二章...完了進行式各時候之用法	116-125
完了進行式各時候之意義	116
完了進行式各時候用法之通則	117
現在完了進行時候之用法	117-122
現在完了進行時候之意義	117
現在完了進行時候與現在完了時候之比較	118

	PAGE
現在完了時候替代現在完了進行時候	119
現在進行時候與現在完了進行時候之比較	120
現在完了進行時候替代現在完了時候	121
過去完了進行時候之用法	122-124
過去完了進行時候之意義	122
過去進行時候與過去完了進行時候之比較	123
過去完了進行時候替代過去完了時候	123
未來完了進行時候之用法	124-125
未來完了進行時候之意義	124
未來進行時候與未來完了進行時候之比較	124
第十三章...命令語氣之時候	125-126
命令語氣動詞時候之數目	125
命令語氣動詞之句主	125
命令語氣動詞之形式	125
第十四章...假設語氣之時候	126-157
假設語氣之定義	126
假設語氣之句式	127
假設語氣時候之總數	127
假設語氣動詞各時候之構造	128
假設語氣動詞各時候構造之公式	129
假設語氣 "To Be" 各時候之形式	135
假設語氣現在時候之用法	137-138
假設語氣現在時候之意義	137
假設語氣現在時候之用途	138-141
用於 "Clauses of Condition" 者	138
用於 "Clauses of Concession" 者	139
用於 "Clauses of Purpose" 者	140
用於 "Clauses of Time" 者	140
用於 "Wish" 或 "Prayer" 者	141
假設語氣過去時候之用法	141-143
假設語氣過去時候之意義	142
假設語氣現在時候與假設語氣過去時候之比較	143

	PAGE
假設語氣過去時候之用途	143-145
用以推翻或反對現在事實者	143
用於“Wish”之後以表希望難以如願者 ...	144
用於“As if”或“As though”之後者	144
用於“As it were”中者	145
假設語氣未來時候之用法	145-150
假設語氣未來時候之意義	146
假設語氣之“Would”	147
假設語氣“Would”之用途	147
假設語氣未來時候用於“Lest”之後者 ...	148
“Were” + Infinitive 之意義	148
假設語氣現在完了時候之用法	150-151
假設語氣現在完了時候之意義	151
假設語氣過去完了時候之用法	151-154
假設語氣過去完了時候之意義	152
“Wish”之後之假設語氣過去完了時候 ...	153
“As if”或“As though”之後之假設語氣過去	
完了時候	153
假設語氣未來完了時候之用法	154-157
假設語氣未來完了時候之意義	155
假設語氣各時候用法之摘要	155
假設語氣各時候用法簡明表	156
第十五章...條件語氣之時候	157-165
條件語氣之定義	157
條件語氣之用途	158
條件語氣時候之數目與構造	159
Simple Form	159-163
Conditional Simple Form 之分類	159
Conditional Future 之公式	160
Conditional Future 之意義	160
Conditional Potential 之意義... ..	162

	PAGE
Compound Form... ..	163-165
Conditional Compound Form 之分類	163
Conditional Perfect 之意義	163
Conditional Potential Perfect 之意義	164
條件語氣各時候用法簡明表	165
第十六章...可能語氣之時候	165-194
可能語氣之定義	165
“May,” “Can,” “Must,” 之用法	165
可能語氣時候之數目與構造	167
可能語氣現在時候之用法	168-180
可能語氣現在時候之意義	168
“May” 之第一種用法	168
“May” 之第二種用法	170
“May” 作假設語氣用法	171
“Can” 之第一種用法	173
“Can” 之第二種用法	174
疑問句中之“Can”	174
“May not” 與 “Can not” 之比較... ..	175
“Can” 之習俗用法	176
“Must” 之第一種用法	177
“Must” 之第二種用法... ..	179
可能語氣過去時候之用法	180-185
可能語氣過去時候之用法	180
作實敘語氣用法	180
作假設語氣用法	183
作條件語氣用法	184
可能語氣現在完了時候之用法	185-186
可能語氣現在完了時候之用法	185
可能語氣過去完了時候之用法	187-190
可能語氣過去完了時候之用法	187
作實敘語氣用法	187

CONTENTS

xiii

	PAGE
作假設語氣用法	188
作條件語氣用法	188
“May,” “Can,” “Must” 時候上之欠缺	
部分	190-194
“May,” “Can,” “Must” 欠缺時候之補充 ...	190
可能語氣之 “Can”	193
可能語氣各時候用法簡表	194
第十七章...時候前後之呼應	195-199
時候前後呼應之之意義	195
時候呼應之二規則	195
第二規則之例外	197
目的子句時候之呼應	198
比較子句時候之呼應	199
第十八章...間接引用語中之時候	200-205
引用語之定義	200
引用語之種類	200
引用語中動詞時候之更易	201
引用語中之疏狀詞或其他關係詞之更易	203

HOW TO USE THE TENSES OF VERBS 英語動詞時候用法

第一章

INTRODUCTION

總論

1. “時候”之意義——動詞 (verb) 之唯一功用，在作句 (sentence) 之云謂語 (predicate)，言句主 (subject) 所爲之一切動作 (action) 也；而一個動作之發生，在在莫不與時間 (time) 有連帶關係，故動詞自有“時候”之變化；“時候” (tense) 者，英文文法中動詞所有變化 (inflection) 之一，表示動作發生之時也。譬如一個動作發生於現在時候 (present time) 者，則表示該動作之動詞，必須用現在式 (verb of the present form) 始能與本意相符合；又如一個動作已發生於過去時候 (past time) 者，或將發生於未來時候 (future time) 者，則表示該動作之動詞，必須用過去式 (verb of the past form) 或未來式 (verb of the future form) 方可；故一個動作發生之時間其所以能準確表出者，即因動詞有“時候”之變化也。

例：如云我現在購一本書。此句應寫作 “I buy a book now,” 因 “buy” 爲現在式動詞。如云我昨日購一本書。此句應寫作 “I bought a book yesterday,” 因 “bought” 爲過去式動詞。如云我明日將購一書。此句應寫作 “I shall buy a book tomorrow,” 因 “shall buy” 爲第一人稱 (first person) 之未來式動詞。

觀於上例，可知一句中動詞，應用何種時候之形式，須依其所指動作發生之時間而定。故吾人作句時，務須注意此

點；最好先詳審所欲言動作發生之時間，然後以相當時候形式之動詞表示之；如是，他人方不致誤會吾人所欲達之意也。

註一：“Tense”一字，係從拉丁文 *tempus* 轉變而來，其意即“時候”也。

註二：一個動詞除表示動作外，亦常有表示狀態 (state) 或存在 (being or existence) 者，但表示動作之動詞數較多耳。

例：He *lies* on bed. 他臥於床上。 (狀態)
 He *is* in the room. 他在室中。 (存在)

2. “時候”之重要——“時候”為動詞中最重要之變化，蓋一個動作發生之時間，無不藉時候之種種變化而明白準確表現也。嘗有文法學者，以時候之重要，而將其擬定為動詞全部之定義，例如在德文文法中，動詞即稱 *zeitwort*，其意即指時候之字 (time word) 也；由此可知“時候”在文法中其重要為何如矣。故研究文法者，對此不得不加以特別注意也，况“時候”之領悟與應用，頗非易事，因其種類繁多，各有各的形式，各有各的用法，稍一不慎，錯誤便隨之而生也。

第 二 章

CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES

時 候 之 分 類

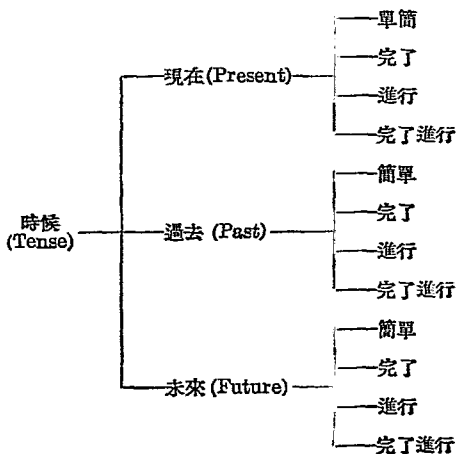
3. 時候之分類——“時候”除表示動作發生之時間外，同時兼指動作在某時候之狀況，此種狀況，共分下列四式：

- (1) 簡單式 (或無定式) (Indefinite Form)——此式示動作是整個的，或籠統的，不及完了或未完了。
- (2) 完了式 (Perfect Form)——此式示動作在某時候已經完了。

- (3) 進行式 (Progressive Form)——此式示動作在某時候正在進行中, 尙未完了.
- (4) 完了進行式 (Perfect Progressive Form)——此式係合(2)與(3)兩式而成, 示動作進行以迄於某時候.

- 例: 1. I *write* a letter. 我寫一封信. (簡單式)
 此句所言寫信是現在的動作.
2. I *have written* a letter. 我現在已寫完了一封信. (完了式)
 此句所言寫信動作現在已經完畢.
3. I *am writing* a letter. 我現在方在寫一封信. (進行式)
 此句所言寫信動作現在正進行中.
4. I *have been writing* the letter. 我寫此信以至於今. (完了進行式)
 此句所言寫信動作繼續以至現在.

4. “時候”之三期——“時候”總別爲三個時期, 即現在時候 (present), 過去時候 (past) 與未來時候 (future) 是也. 此三個時候, 各有簡單, 完了, 進行, 與完了進行四式; 故時候共分三類計十二式:



第 三 章

FORMATION OF TENSES

“時 候” 之 構 造

5. “時候”之構造——前章所列動詞之十二個時候，各有特殊的形式，因各時候所指之時間與所表之狀況，彼此均不相同；且動詞中各種“語氣”(mood)之時候，其形式亦不一致；自動態(active voice)各時候，與被動態(passive voice)各時候之形式又復互異；一個原形動詞(root verb)斷不能具如許之變化，以符各時候之特殊形式也。故一個動詞各種時候之造成，除“現在時候”即用原形動詞，過去時候用動詞本身變化外，其他各時候，都以助動詞(auxiliary verb)與原形動詞，或現在分詞(present participle)，或過去分詞(past participle)，拼合而成：例如以助動詞“shall”或“will”加於原形動詞之前，則成未來時候(future tense)；以助動詞“have”加於過去分詞之前，則成完了時候(perfect tense)；以助動詞“be”加於現在分詞之前，則成進行時候(progressive tense)；加於過去分詞之前，則成受動態各時候。

例: I <i>open</i> the window. 我開此窗。	(現 在)	open = 原形動詞
I <i>opened</i> the window. 我嘗開此窗。	(過 去)	open + ed = 過去式動詞
He <i>will open</i> the window. 我將開此窗。	(未 來)	will + open = 第三人稱未來式動詞
I <i>have opened</i> the window. 我曾開此窗。	(完 了)	have + opened = 完了式動詞
He <i>is opening</i> the window. 他方開此窗。	(進 行)	is + opening = 進行式動詞
The window <i>is opened</i> by me. 此窗為我所開。	(現在受動)	is + opened = 受動態現在

- 註一：不用助動詞而造成之時候，如現在與過去時候，曰簡單時候 (simple tense)。用助動詞而造成之時候，曰拼合時候 (compound tense)，亦稱 verb phrase。
- 註二：動詞各種時候之造成，得助動詞之力不少，各時候非特能準確表示動作發生之時間，而且可以顯示動作之狀況，此為英語固有之特點，而其他文字所未有者也。
- 註三：現在時候與過去時候亦有用助動詞“do”造成者，但此式大抵只能於疑問句 (interrogative sentence) 中，否定句 (negative sentence) 中，或加重語勢之肯定句 (emphatic affirmative sentence) 中見之。

例： <i>Do you go to school today?</i>	(現在)	} 疑問句
你今日赴校否。		
<i>Did you go to school yesterday?</i>	(過去)	}
你昨日曾赴校乎。		
<i>I do not go to school today.</i>	(現在)	} 否定句
我今日不赴校。		
<i>I did not go to school yesterday.</i>	(過去)	}
我昨日未赴校。		
<i>I do love her.</i>	(現在)	} 加重語勢肯定句
我今確愛她。		
<i>I did love her.</i>	(過去)	
我昔確愛她。		

6. 動詞之基本形——一個動詞，各有三個基本形式 (three principal parts of a verb)，即：

- (1) 原形 (Root Verb)
- (2) 過去形 (Past Form)
- (3) -過去分詞 (Past Participle)

以上三式，其所以稱為基本者，緣動詞之種種變化，皆由此三形分合而組成也。

7. 原形動詞之用途——原形動詞之用途有五：

- (1) 為實敘語氣動詞之現在時候 (as the present tense, indicative mood)，惟句主如為第三人稱單數 (third person, singular)，則動詞之尾例須加“s”或“es。”

註：“Be”與“have”二個動詞不在此例，蓋此二字對各人稱各數自有特形也。

例：I *learn* English. 我習英文。
 He *learns* German. 他習德文。
 The cat *catches* a rat. 此貓捕一鼠。
 I *am* sick. 我病了。
 You *are* sick. 你病了。
 He *is* sick. 他病了。
 We *are* students. 我們學生也。
 I *have* a book. 我有一本書。
 He *has* a pen. 他有一枝筆。
 You *have* a pencil. 你有一枝鉛筆。

(2) 爲命令語氣動詞——命令語氣只有一個現在時候，故用原形動詞。

例：Be honest. 宜誠實。
 Go quickly, or you will miss the train. 速去，否則趕不上火車矣。

(3) 以“ing”加於原形動詞之尾成“現在分詞。”

公式：Root + “ing” = Present Participle

例：I *am eating* my supper. 我方吃晚飯。
 He *is writing* a letter. 現在他方寫一封信。

註：現在分詞之用途，是與助動詞“be”相聯而造成各進行時候 (progressive tenses)，關於原形動詞語尾加“ing”之拼法變化，參閱第12節。

(4) 以“to”加於原形動詞之前成“不定式”(infinitive)。

公式：“To” + Root = Infinitive

例：To *study* is useful. 讀書有益。
 I like *to play* tennis in summer. 夏季我喜打網球。

註：此處之“to”稱曰不定式之記號 (sign of the infinitive)，不作前置詞 (preposition) 解。

(5) a. 以助動詞“Shall”或“Will”加於原形動詞之前成未來式.

例: I *shall go* tomorrow. 我明日將去。
 You *will see* him tomorrow. 你於明日可見彼。
 He *will come* soon. 他不久就來。

b. 以助動詞“Can,”“May,”或“Must”加於原形動詞之前成可能語氣動詞 (verb of the potential mood).

例: I *can speak* English. 我能說英語。
 You *may go* now. 現在你可去了。
 He *must work* hard. 他必須努力工作。

c. 以助動詞“Do”加於原形動詞之前,得下列三種功用: (參閱 5 節註三.)

- (i) 可作成現在時候與過去時候之疑問句. (for asking questions)
- (ii) 可作成現在時候與過去時候之加重語勢句. (for emphasis)
- (iii) 與“not”並用可作成現在時候與過去時候之否定句. (for negation)

例: Do you *know* me? 你認識我乎。
 Did he *come* yesterday? 昨天他來否。
 I *did go* to see him, but he was absent. 我確去見他但他不在。
 Work well when you *do work*. 既作矣須作好。
 He works hard but he *does not* succeed. 他工作甚勤然未成功。
 I *do not* like this. 我不喜此。

8. 過去形動詞之用途及來源——過去形動詞之唯一用途,係作實敘語氣之過去時候,此形在英語中,並無固定專字,悉從原形動詞改變而成。至其改變之法,須先視原形動詞是規則的 (regular) 或不規則的 (irregular); 如係規則的

動詞 (regular verbs), 僅在原形動詞之尾加 “d” 或 “ed”
即成過去形; 如係不規則動詞 (irregular verbs), 須改易原
形動詞之內部母音 (inside vowel), 始成過去形。

例: a. I *walked* ten miles yesterday. 昨天我走了十哩。
 He *learned* English last year. 他去年曾習英文。

		原形動詞		過去形動詞	
規則的	love	walk	<i>loved</i>	<i>walked</i>	
不規則的	come	sit	<i>came</i>	<i>sat</i>	

註一: 過去形動詞只能個字獨用, 不得與任何助動詞相聯合, 此層學者務須格外注意, 蓋初習英文者, 極易犯此病也。

誤

正

例: I *could* helped you. I could help you. 或
 我能助你. I helped you.

註二: 凡原形動詞與助動詞聯合而成之各時候形式, 欲用於過去形時, 只將助動詞改為過去形即可, 因為助動詞不論為現在形為過去形俱能與原形動詞相聯。

例: He <i>can</i> do this.	他能為此.	(現在)	
He <i>could</i> do this.	他能為此.	(過去)	正
He <i>could</i> <i>did</i> this.		(過去)	誤

9. 過去分詞之用途及來源——過去分詞之用途凡二:

(1) 以助動詞 “have” 加於過去分詞之前, 成完了時候
 (perfect tense)。

公式: “Have” + Past Participle = Perfect Tense

例: He *has killed* a snake. 他已殺了一條蛇。
 I *have eaten* my dinner. 我已吃飯。

(2) 以助動詞 “be” 加於過去分詞之前, 成動詞之受動態
 (passive voice)。

公式: “Be” + Past Participle = Passive Voice

例: *This essay was written by me in 1935.* 此文爲吾一九三五年所作。
A snake has been killed by him. 一蛇已被他殺死。

至過去分詞之來源，亦係由原形動詞改變而成；如原形動詞係規則的，其過去分詞完全與過去形相同；如係不規則的，大抵在原形動詞之尾加“n”或“en”即成過去分詞；其內部之母音，有變者亦有不變者。

例:	原形	過去形	過去分詞
規則的動詞	play	played	played
不規則的動詞	{ break	broke	broken
	{ beat	beat	beaten

10. 基本形用法撮要——茲爲使讀者易於記憶起見，特將動詞三個基本形之用法簡述如下：

- (1) 原形動詞可獨立的作句語之云謂動詞，亦可與助動詞(現在或過去)相聯，但絕對不能用於助動詞“have”或“be”之後。

例: *I go. I shall go. He may go. Did you go? I could write a letter. He must work. He would come. I should do it.*

- (2) 過去形動詞可獨立的作句語之云謂動詞，但絕對不得與任何助動詞相聯。

例: *The wind blew hard, the wave rose high, and the ship ran fast.* 風猛浪高船駛行甚速。

- (3) 過去分詞與現在分詞，絕對不能獨爲句語之云謂動詞，必須有助動詞“have”或“be”加於其前，方可作正式之云謂動詞。

例: *I am catching a rat.* 我方捕一鼠。
I have caught a rat. 我已捕一鼠。
A rat is caught by me. 一鼠爲我所捕。

第 四 章

FORMATION OF PAST TENSE AND PAST PARTICIPLE

過去時候與過去分詞之作法

11. 動詞之種類——就過去時候與過去分詞之產生方面論，動詞計分二類：

- (1) 規則動詞 (Regular Verbs).
- (2) 不規則動詞 (Irregular Verbs).

12. 規則動詞過去時候與過去分詞之作法——規則動詞，在近代英語中，幾佔動詞全數十分之八九，凡由他國文字所輸入之動詞，以及由他種詞類所轉成之動詞 (verbs derived from other parts of speech)，盡屬此類，故其數目，較之不規則動詞爲多。至於規則動詞過去時候與過去分詞之作法，大都在原形動詞之尾加“ed”即成。

公式： $\text{Root} + \text{"ed"} = \begin{cases} \text{Past} \\ \text{Past Participle} \end{cases}$

例：	原形	過去	過去分詞
	return	returned	returned
	paint	painte <i>d</i>	painte <i>d</i>
	attend	attende <i>d</i>	attende <i>d</i>
	sail	sail <i>e</i> d	sail <i>e</i> d

但下列五則，有關拼法上之變化，務須注意。

- (1) 原形動詞之最後字母如爲無音“e,”僅加“d”可也。

例：	原形	過去	過去分詞
	live	live <i>d</i>	live <i>d</i>
	move	move <i>d</i>	move <i>d</i>
	love	love <i>d</i>	love <i>d</i>
	like	like <i>d</i>	like <i>d</i>

註：如欲造成現在分詞，先去原形之尾“e,”再加“ing.”

例：	原形	現在分詞
	live	living
	move	moving
	love	loving
	like	liking

(2) 原形動詞之最後一字母，如為“y,”而“y”之前一字母，如為子音 (consonant), 須先易“y”為“i,”然後再加“ed.”

例：	原形	過去	過去分詞
	carry	carried	carried
	study	studied	studied
	try	tried	tried
	cry	cried	cried

但“y”之前一字母，如為母音 (vowel), 照常例加“ed,”毋須易“y”為“i.”

例：	原形	過去	過去分詞
	play	played	played
	employ	employed	employed
	stay	stayed	stayed

下列三字，易“y”為“i”之後，僅加“d.”

例：	原形	過去	過去分詞
	lay	laid	laid
	pay	paid	paid
	say	said	said

註：如加“ing,”不論“y”之前為母音或為子音，毋須易“y”為“i.”

例：	原形	現在分詞
	carry	carrying
	play	playing
	say	saying

(3) 單音節動詞 (Verbs of One Syllable) 之尾，如為單子音 (single consonant), 而其前又為單短聲母音 (short single vowel), 未加“ed”之先，須重複字尾之子音。

例:	原形	過去	過去分詞
	stab	stabbed	stabbed
	stop	stopped	stopped
	beg	begged	begged
	sum	summed	summed

如語尾之前爲長聲母音 (long vowel), 則又依常例加“d”或“ed”。

例:	原形	過去	過去分詞
	dine	dined	dined
	stoop	stooped	stooped
	tire	tired	tired
	Jump	Jumped	Jumped

- (4) 複音節動詞之語尾, 如爲單子音, 而其前又爲單短聲母音, 設該字之重音 (accent) 讀在最後之音節上, 未加“ed”之前, 亦須重複其語尾之子音。

例:	原形	過去	過去分詞
	permit'	permitted	permitted
	prefer'	preferred	preferred
	admit'	admitted	admitted
	refer'	referred	referred

如重音不讀在最後之音節上, 仍加“ed,” 不必重複其語尾之子音。

例:	原形	過去	過去分詞
	lim'it	limited	limited
	en'ter	entered	entered
	o'pen	opened	opened
	of'fer	offered	offered

下列五字, 係屬例外, 其重音雖不在最後音節上, 然仍重複語尾之子音。

	現在	過去	過去分詞
	wor'ship	worshipped	worshipped
	mim'ic	mimicked	mimicked

fro/ɪc	frolicked	frolicked
pic'nic	picnicked	picnicked
trav'el	travelled	travelled

註：“Worship”與“travel”二字亦有不重複其語尾子音者，此係美國通行之辦法也，如“worshipped,”“traveled.”

- (5) 在尖銳子音之後，如 f, k, p, s, x, sh, ch 等，“ed”須讀如“t”音。

現在	過去	或過去分詞
stuff	stuffed	= stuff
laugh	laughed	= laft
look	looked	= lookt
stop	stopped	= stopt
ask	asked	= askt
pass	passed	= past
mix	mixed	= mixt
finish	finished	= finisht
reach	reached	= reacht

13. 不規則動詞過去時候與過去分詞之作法——不規則動詞，其所以如斯稱者，因其過去時候與過去分詞之作成，並不依照通例而加“ed,”皆由字之內部變化而別之也。但其變化之性質，異常複雜，幾無一定法則可資遵循，學者除將動詞一一熟讀牢記外，別無他法；好在此類動詞不多，尋常所用者，數僅逾百耳。

不規則動詞分爲二大類：

- (1) 易原形動詞內部母音而成過去時候，加“e(n)”於原形動詞之尾而成過去分詞，此類曰純粹的不規則動詞 (True Irregular Verbs)。
- (2) 加“t”或“d”(not “ed”)於原形動詞之尾而成過去時候或過去分詞，此類曰冒形或縮形的規則動詞 (Disguised or Contracted Regular Verbs)。

例:	原形	過去	過去分詞	
	see	saw	seen	} 第一類
	speak	spoke	spoken	
	have	had	had	} 第二類
	build	built	built	

不規則動詞表

a. 純粹的不規則動詞

第一類

(以母音變化作過去加“-e(n)”作過去分詞)

(甲)

原形	過去	過去分詞
see	saw	seen
eat	ate	eaten
beat	beat	beaten
give	gave	given
bid	bade	bidden
fall	fell	fallen
take	took	taken
mistake	mistook	mistaken
shake	shook	shaken
forsake	forsook	forsaken
slay	slew	slain
lie	lay	lain
be	was (複數 — were)	been
do	did	done
go	went	gone

(乙)

know	knew	known
blow	blew	blown
grow	grew	grown
throw	threw	thrown
draw	drew	drawn
fly	flew	flown

(丙)

come	came	come
become	became	become
run	ran	run

(丁)

sit	sat	sat
stand	stood	stood
understand	understood	understood
hold	held	held
behold	beheld	beheld

第 二 類

(大抵將原形之“e”“i”等母音變爲“o”)

(甲)

(i	ō	ī)
write	wrote	written
smite	smote	smitten
rise	rose	risen
arise	arose	arisen
ride	rode	ridden
stride	strode	stridden
thrive	throve	thriven
abide	abode	abode
shine	shone	shone

(乙)

(i	ī	ī)
bite	bit	bitten
hide	hid	hidden
chide	chid	chidden
slide	slid	slidden

(丙)

(ē, ē, ā	ō	ō)
speak	spoke	spoken
steal	stole	stolen
weave	wove	woven

cleave	clove	cloven
freeze	froze	frozen
break	broke	broken
tread	trod	trodden
get	got	<i>got</i>
forget	forgot	forgotten
beget	begot	begotten
swell	<i>swelled</i>	swollen
choose	chose	chosen
awake	awoke	<i>awaked</i>

(丁)

tear	tore	torn
bear (生産)	bore	born
bear (負, 忍)	bore	borne
forbear	forbore	forborne
wear	wore	worn
swear	swore	sworn
shear	<i>sheared</i>	shorn

第 三 類

(大抵原形皆含有“-in-”者)

(甲)

(in	an	un)
begin	began	begun
sing	sang	sung
ring	rang	rung
spring	sprang	sprung
drink	drank	drunk
sink	sank	sunk
shrink	shrank	shrunk
swim	swam	swum

(乙)

(in	un	un)
spin	spun	spun
sting	stung	stung
swing	swung	swung
cling	clung	clung
fling	flung	flung

sling	slung	slung
string	strung	strung
wring	wrung	wrung
slink	slunk	slunk
hang (懸, 掛)	hung	hung
hang (絞刑)	hanged	hanged
stick	stuck	stuck
strike	struck	struck
dig	dug	dug
win	won	won
(丙)		
find	found	found
bind	bound	bound
wind	wound	wound
grind	ground	ground

b. 縮形的規則動詞

(甲)

(過去與過去分詞俱以“d”爲語尾者)

have	had	had
make	made	made
pay	paid	paid
lay	laid	laid
say	said	said
hear	heard	heard
flee	fled	fled
shoe	shod	shod
clothe	clothed	clad (或 clothed)
sell	sold	sold
tell	told	told

(乙)

(原形中之母音在過去與過去分詞中讀作短音者)

read	read	read
lead	led	led
feed	fed	fed
bleed	bled	bled
breed	bred	bred
speed	sped	sped

meet	met	met
shoot	shot	shot
light	lit (或 lighted)	lit (或 lighted)

(丙)

(- d)	(- t)	(- t)
lend	lent	lent
rend	rent	rent
send	sent	sent
spend	spent	spent
bend	bent (或 bended)	bent (或 bended)
blend	blent (或 blended)	blent (或 blended)
wend	went (或 wended)	went (或 wended)
build	built	built
gild	gilt (或 gilded)	gilt (或 gilded)
gird	girt (或 girded)	girt (或 girded)

(丁)

(原形中之母音縮短加“v”成過去或過去分詞者)

keep	kept	kept
sleep	slept	slept
creep	crept	crept
weep	wept	wept
sweep	swept	swept
feel	felt	felt
kneel	knelt	knelt
deal	dealt	dealt
leave	left	left
cleave	cleft	cleft
bereave	bereft	bereft
lose	lost	lost
mean	meant	meant
lean	leant (或 leaned)	leant (或 leaned)
dream	dreamt (或 dreamed)	dreamt (或 dreamed)
leap	leapt (或 leaped)	leapt (或 leaped)

(戊)

(過去與過去分詞不變形者)

let	let	let
set	set	set
bet	bet	bet
shed	shed	shed

shred	shred	shred
spread	spread	spread
sweat	sweat	sweat
beat	beat	beat (或 beaten)
hit	hit	hit
bid	bid	bid
knit	knit	knit
slit	slit	slit
split	split	split
rid	rid	rid
spit	spit	spit
quit	quit	quit
cast	cast	cast
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
put	put	put
shut	shut	shut
hurt	hurt	hurt
burst	burst	burst
thrust	thrust	thrust

(己)

catch	caught	caught
teach	taught	taught
buy	bought	bought
bring	brought	brought
think	thought	thought
seek	sought	sought
beseech	besought	besought
work	wrought (或 worked)	wrought (或 worked)
fight	fought	fought

第 五 章

AUXILIARY VERBS

助 動 詞

14. 助動詞之種類——助動詞爲造成未來，完了，進行各時候之重要工具，故與原形動詞或兩種分詞相結合時，其

界限首宜分清，切勿亂用，因有只能與原形動詞相結合者，有只能與分詞相結合者；茲就其幫助構造各種時候而言，助動詞分爲三類如下：

第一類……專與原形動詞相結合者

	現在	過去	
a. 未來助動詞 Future Auxiliaries	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{shall} \\ \text{will} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{should} \\ \text{would} \end{array} \right.$	
b. 可能語氣助動詞 Potential Auxiliaries	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{can} \\ \text{may} \\ \text{must} \\ \text{need} \\ \text{dare} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{could} \\ \text{might} \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{You need } \textit{not} \text{ go.} \\ \text{I dare } \textit{not} \text{ do it.} \end{array} \right\}$ <small>作助動詞用常隨有“not”</small>
c. 發問，否定，加重語勢 助動詞 Interrogative, Negative, Emphatic Auxiliaries	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{do} \\ \text{或} \\ \text{does (第三人稱單數)} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{did} \\ \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{He } \textit{does not} \text{ come} \end{array} \right\}$

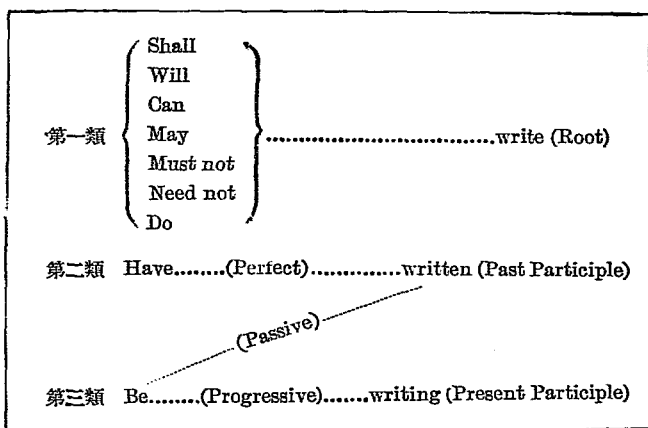
第二類……專與過去分詞相結合者

完了時候助動詞 Perfect Auxiliaries	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{或} \\ \text{has (第三人稱單數)} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{had} \\ \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \text{He } \textit{has} \text{ seen it} \end{array} \right\}$
--------------------------------	---	---	---

第三類……專與現在分詞或過去分詞相結合者

進行時候 受動態 助動詞 Progressive Passive	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Auxiliaries} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{different forms of "Be"} \end{array} \right.$
--	---	---

助動詞與原形動詞及分詞相結合圖



15. 助動詞位置之順序 —— 凡二個或二個以上助動詞同用於一句 verb phrase 時，其位置之排列，應依照上節所舉三類之次序，先第一類，次第二類，再次第三類。

例:	(I)	(II)	(III)
I	shall	have	— written it by that time. 到那時我將已經寫完了。
I	may	have	— seen him before. 從前我或許曾見他。
I	must	have	— seen him. 我必已見過他。
I	can not	have	— seen him. 我未必已見過他。
I	shall	—	be writing to my father soon. 不久我將正在寫信給吾父。
Your letter	must	—	be written in ink. 你的信必須用墨寫之。
The bridge	can	—	be seen from here. 從此處即能見橋。

I	—	have	been writing a letter.
		我寫信以至於今。	
Many books	—	have	been written on the subject.
		關於此種科目書籍已經著了不少。	
The letter	must	have	been written already.
		信必已寫畢矣。	
A stone	might	have	been thrown across, the distance was so short.
		石可擲至對面，因距離甚短也。	

第 六 章

MOOD

語 氣

16. 研究時候之方法 —— 第四節表中所列之十二個時候，乃一個動詞所有時候之總數也。但按諸實際，各種語氣 (mood) 之時候，不盡相同；數有多少，意有虛實，形式既殊，用法自異；故欲研究時候之用法，當從各種語氣分別探討之也。

17. 語氣之定義 —— 一句中之云謂動詞，對其句主所述之動作或狀態等，可分數種語氣表示之；蓋吾人出一言，有完全注重於事實 (fact) 者，有對某事不確定而懸擬 (doubt) 者，有假定某事之因果 (supposition) 者，有對人命令或向人請託 (command or entreaty) 者，有言某事可能 (possibility) 者；用意既有不同，語法自當變易；此種語法，在文法中稱曰動詞之語氣 (mood)。

18. 語氣之種類 —— 動詞之語氣計有五種：

(1) 實敘語氣 (Indicative Mood) 係表示確定事實之語氣。

例：The lessons <i>are</i> hard.	功課甚難。
He <i>is</i> not sick.	他並未患病。
Do you <i>go</i> ?	你去乎。

(2) 命令語氣 (Imperative Mood) 係表示命令或請求之語氣。

- 例: *Go at once.* 速去。
Do not spit on the floor. 勿在地上吐痰。
Please help me. 請教我。

(3) 假設語氣 (Subjunctive Mood) 係表示不確定的或假設而非事實之語氣。

- 例: *If it be fine, I would go.* 若天晴, 我決去。
If I had wings, I could fly. 設我有翼, 我便能飛。
If he had been rich, he would have lived more comfortably.
 如他從前稍為富有, 其生活必更舒服。

(4) 條件語氣 (Conditional Mood) 係表示動作受某種條件限制之語氣。

- 例: *I will try again, if I fail this time.*
 此次萬一失敗, 我必再試。
I could do it, if I were a rich man.
 如我為富人, 我能為之。
I will pardon him provided that he acknowledges his fault.
 如他認過, 我即恕之。

(5) 可能語氣 (Potential Mood) 係表示可能之語氣。

- 例: *I can do this.* 我能為此。
It may rain. 天或下雨。
You must go. 你必須去。

註: 五種語氣之中, 惟實敘語氣用途最廣, 因吾人日常所言所語, 十有八九, 皆屬於事實也。

第 七 章

FORMATION OF THE TENSES OF A VERB
IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD

實敘語氣動詞各時候之構造

19. 實敘語氣動詞時候之總數——自動態實敘語氣動詞, 共有時候十二, 其構造方式與實際用法, 各不相同, 學

者宜先熟記各時候構造之公式，再徹底了解各時候之意義與用法；如是，應用時方可得心應手也。

實敘語氣動詞十二時候表：

- (1) 現在時候 (Present Indefinite Tense)
- (2) 過去時候 (Past Indefinite Tense)
- (3) 未來時候 (Future Indefinite Tense)
- (4) 現在完了時候 (Present Perfect Tense)
- (5) 過去完了時候 (Past Perfect Tense)
- (6) 未來完了時候 (Future Perfect Tense)
- (7) 現在進行時候 (Present Progressive Tense)
- (8) 過去進行時候 (Past Progressive Tense)
- (9) 未來進行時候 (Future Progressive Tense)
- (10) 現在完了進行時候 (Present Perfect Progressive Tense)
- (11) 過去完了進行時候 (Past Perfect Progressive Tense)
- (12) 未來完了進行時候 (Future Perfect Progressive Tense)

20. 現在時候之構造——現在時候之造成，以原形動詞為主；句主如為第一人稱或第二人稱 (subject of the first or second person)，不論單數複數，俱用原形動詞；句主如為第三人稱單數 (third person, singular)，原形動詞之尾，須另加“s”或“es；”如係複數 (third person, plural)，仍用原形動詞，毋須另加“s”或“es。”

公式： 現在時候

句主之數	單	複
第一人稱	Root	Root
第二人稱	Root	Root
第三人稱	Root + ^s _{es}	Root

例： I write. We write.
 You write. You write.
 { He writes. } { They write. }
 { The boy writes. } { The boys write. }

註一：原形動詞之尾，加“s”或加“es，”須視該動詞之最後字母而定。如其最後字母為“s，”“z，”“x，”“ch，”“sh，”或“th”等，則加“es，”否則僅加“s”可也；但在“o”之後，通常亦加“es。”

例: play plays catch catches
 go goes pass passes

註二：第一人稱之句主，必為代名詞 (pronoun) “I” 或 “we;” 第二人稱之句主，必為代名詞 “you;” 第三人稱之句主，或為代名詞 “he,” “she,” “it,” “they;” 或為名詞 (noun), 因名詞必屬於第三人稱也。

21. 過去時候之構造 —— 過去時候之造成，不論句主之人稱或數，一律均用動詞之過去式。

公式: 過 去 時 候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	Past Form	Past Form
第二人稱	Past Form	Past Form
第三人稱	Past Form	Past Form

例: I wrote. We wrote.
 You wrote. You wrote.
 He wrote. They wrote.

22. 未來時候之構造 —— 未來時候之造成，以助動詞 “shall” 或 “will” 加於原形動詞之前即可。如句主為第一人稱，不論單複數用 “shall;” 如為第二或第三人稱，不論單複數用 “will;” 但在疑問句中，即句主為第二人稱，亦用 “shall.”

公式: 未 來 時 候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	“Shall” + Root	“Shall” + Root
第二人稱	“Will” + Root	“Will” + Root
第三人稱	“Will” + Root	“Will” + Root

未來時候(疑問句)

句主之數 句主人稱	句主之數	
	單	複
第一人稱	"Shall" + 句主 + Root	"Shall" + 句主 + Root
第二人稱	"Shall" + 句主 + Root	"Shall" + 句主 + Root
第三人稱	"Will" + 句主 + Root	"Will" + 句主 + Root

例:	I shall write.	We shall write.
	You will write.	You will write.
	He will write.	They will write.
	疑 問 句	
	Shall I write?	Shall we write?
	Shall you write?	Shall we write?
	Will he write?	Will they write?

23. 完了時候之一般形式——完了時候，以助動詞“have”加於過去分詞之前而成，其式如下：

公式：“Have” + Past Participle = Perfect Tense

24. “To Have”之變化——助動詞“to have”既為作成完了時候之唯一工具，故其變化，殊屬重要。茲將“to have”之現在，過去及未來各形，列表於下。

“To Have”三個時候表

句主之數 句主人稱	現在		過去		未來	
	單	複	單	複	單	複
第一人稱	I have	We have	I had	We had	I shall have	We shall hav.
第二人稱	You have	You have	You had	You had	You will have	You will have
第三人稱	He has She ,, It ,,	They have	He had She ,, It ,,	They had	He will have She ,, ,, It ,, ,,	They will have

註：“To have”作主要動詞用 (used as a principal verb) 意作“有”解 (to possess)，當然尙有其他時候之形式。

25. 現在完了時候之構造——現在完了時候，以助動詞，“have”之現在式，加於過去分詞之前而成。

公式： 現在完了時候

句主之數	單	複
句主人稱		
第一人稱	“Have” + Past Participle	“Have” + Past Participle
第二人稱	“Have” + Past Participle	“Have” + Past Participle
第三人稱	“Has” + Past Participle	“Have” + Past Participle

例： I have written. We have written.
 You have written. You have written.
 He has written. They have written.

26. 過去完了時候之構造——過去完了時候，以助動詞“have”之過去式，加於過去分詞之前而成。

公式： 過去完了時候

句主之數	單	複
句主人稱		
第一人稱	“Had” + Past Participle	“Had” + Past Participle
第二人稱	“Had” + Past Participle	“Had” + Past Participle
第三人稱	“Had” + Past Participle	“Had” + Past Participle

例： I had written. We had written.
 You had written. You had written.
 He had written. They had written.

27. 未來完了時候之構造——未來完了時候，以助動詞“have”之未來式，加於過去分詞之前而成。

公式： 將來完了時候

句主人稱	句主之數	
	單	複
第一人稱	"Shall have"+Past Participle	"Shall have"+Past Participle
第二人稱	"Will have"+Past Participle	"Will have"+Past Participle
第三人稱	"Will have"+Past Participle	"Will have"+Past Participle

例： I shall have written. We shall have written.
 You will have written. You will have written.
 He will have written. They will have written.

28. 進行時候之一般形式——進行時候，以助動詞“be”加於現在分詞之前而成，其式如下。

公式：Be+Present Participle = Progressive Tense

29. “To Be”之變化——助動詞“to be”，為作成進行時候之必需工具，而其變化又多，特將“to be”六個時候之變形，分列於下，以便學者。

“To Be”六個時候表

句主人稱	現在		過去		未來	
	單	複	單	複	單	複
第一人稱	I am	We are	I was	We were	I shall be	We shall be
第二人稱	You are	You are	You were	You were	You will be	You will be
第三人稱	He is	They are	He was	They were	He will be	They will be

句主人稱	現在完了		過去完了		未來完了	
	單	複	單	複	單	複
第一人稱	I have been	We have been	I had been	We had been	I shall have been	We shall have been
第二人稱	You have been	You have been	You had been	You had been	You will have been	You will have been
第三人稱	He has been	They have been	He had been	They had been	He will have been	They will have been

註：“To be”不論為主動詞為助動詞，只有上列六個時候。

30. 現在進行時候之構造——現在進行時候，以助動詞“be”之現在式，加於現在分詞之前而成。

公式： 現在進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	“Am”+Present Participle	“Are”+Present Participle
第二人稱	“Are”+Present Participle	“Are”+Present Participle
第三人稱	“Is”+Present Participle	“Are”+Present Participle

例： I am writing. We are writing.
 You are writing. You are writing.
 He is writing. They are writing.

31. 過去進行時候之構造——過去進行時候，以助動詞“be”之過去式加於現在分詞之前而成。

公式： 過去進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	“Was”+Present Participle	“Were”+Present Participle
第二人稱	“Were”+Present Participle	“Were”+Present Participle
第三人稱	“Was”+Present Participle	“Were”+Present Participle

例： I was writing. We were writing.
 You were writing. You were writing.
 He was writing. They were writing.

32. 未來進行時候之構造——未來進行時候，以助動詞“be”之未來式，加於現在分詞之前而成。

公式： 未來進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Shall be"+Present Participle	"Shall be"+Present Participle
第二人稱	"Will be"+Present Participle	"Will be"+Present Participle
第三人稱	"Will be"+Present Participle	"Will be"+Present Participle

例： I shall be writing. We shall be writing.
 You will be writing. You will be writing.
 He will be writing. They will be writing.

33. 現在完了進行時候之構造——現在完了進行時候，以助動詞“be”之現在完了式，加於現在分詞之前而成。

公式： 現在完了進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Have been"+Present Participle	"Have been"+Present Participle
第二人稱	"Have been"+Present Participle	"Have been"+Present Participle
第三人稱	"Has been"+Present Participle	"Have been"+Present Participle

例： I have been writing. We have been writing.
 You have been writing. You have been writing.
 He has been writing. They have been writing.

34. 過去完了進行時候之構造——過去完了進行時候，以助動詞“be”之過去完了式，加於現在分詞之前而成。

公式： 過去完了進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Had been"+Present Participle	"Had been"+Present Participle
第二人稱	"Had been"+Present Participle	"Had been"+Present Participle
第三人稱	"Had been"+Present Participle	"Had been"+Present Participle

例： I had been writing. We had been writing.
 You had been writing. You had been writing.
 He had been writing. They had been writing.

35. 未來完了進行時候之構造——未來完了進行時候，以助動詞“be”之未來完了式，加於現在分詞之前而成。

公式： 未來完了進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Shall have been"+ Present Participle	"Shall have been"+ Present Participle
第二人稱	"Will have been"+ Present Participle	"Will have been"+ Present Participle
第三人稱	"Will have been"+ Present Participle	"Will have been"+ Present Participle

例： I shall have been writing. We shall have been writing.
 You will have been writing. You will have been writing.
 He will have been writing. They will have been writing.

第 八 章

FORMATION OF THE TENSES OF A VERB IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

動詞受動態各時候之構造

36. 動詞受動態各時候之一般形式——第七章中所列各種時候之構造，悉係動詞自動態 (active voice) 各時候之形；而動詞受動態 (passive voice) 各時候之形，與自動態各時候之形，皆不相同，其一般形式，即以助動詞“to be”之各形，加於過去分詞之前而成：“be” + past participle = passive voice. 惟應用時，務須詳審句主之數與入稱，而定“to be”之相當形式。(參閱 29 節.)

註：凡動詞之句主為行使動作者，該動詞即為自動態動詞；凡動詞之句主為承受動作者，該動詞即為受動態動詞。

例：I killed a snake. 我殺一蛇。 (自動態)
A snake was killed by me. 一蛇為我所殺。 (受動態)

37. 動詞受動態各時候之構造——受動態各時候之構造，以助動詞“to be”之各式，加於過去分詞之前而成。如現在時候，則以“to be”之現在式，加於過去分詞之前。過去時候，則以“to be”之過去式，加於過去分詞之前。其餘則可依此類推。茲將各時候之公式，列表於下，以便習記。

受 動 態 現 在 時 候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	“Am” + Past Participle	“Are” + Past Participle
第二人稱	“Are” + Past Participle	“Are” + Past Participle
第三人稱	“Is” + Past Participle	“Are” + Past Participle

例: I am rewarded. We are rewarded.
 You are rewarded. You are rewarded.
 He is rewarded. They are rewarded.

受動態過去時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Was" + Past Participle	"Were" + Past Participle
第二人稱	"Were" + Past Participle	"Were" + Past Participle
第三人稱	"Was" + Past Participle	"Were" + Past Participle

例: I was rewarded. We were rewarded.
 You were rewarded. You were rewarded.
 He was rewarded. They were rewarded.

受動態未來時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Shall be" + Past Participle	"Shall be" + Past Participle
第二人稱	"Will be" + Past Participle	"Will be" + Past Participle
第三人稱	"Will be" + Past Participle	"Will be" + Past Participle

例: I shall be rewarded. We shall be rewarded.
 You will be rewarded. You will be rewarded.
 He will be rewarded. They will be rewarded.

受動態現在完了時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Have been" + Past Participle	"Have been" + Past Participle
第二人稱	"Have been" + Past Participle	"Have been" + Past Participle
第三人稱	"Has been" + Past Participle	"Have been" + Past Participle

例: I have been rewarded. We have been rewarded.
 You have been rewarded. You have been rewarded.
 He has been rewarded. They have been rewarded.

受動態過去完了時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Had been" + Past Participle	"Had been" + Past Participle
第二人稱	"Had been" + Past Participle	"Had been" + Past Participle
第三人稱	"Had been" + Past Participle	"Had been" + Past Participle

例: I had been rewarded. We had been rewarded.
 You had been rewarded. You had been rewarded.
 He had been rewarded. They had been rewarded.

受動態未來完了時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Shall have been" + Past Participle	"Shall have been" + Past Participle
第二人稱	"Will have been" + Past Participle	"Will have been" + Past Participle
第三人稱	"Will have been" + Past Participle	"Will have been" + Past Participle

例: I shall have been rewarded. We shall have been rewarded.
 You will have been rewarded. You will have been rewarded.
 He will have been rewarded. They will have been rewarded.

38. 受動態進行時候之公式——受動態進行時候,以“to be being”加於過去分詞之前而成。

受動態現在進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Am being" + Past Participle	"Are being" + Past Participle
第二人稱	"Are being" + Past Participle	"Are being" + Past Participle
第三人稱	"Is being" + Past Participle	"Are being" + Past Participle

例: I am being rewarded. We are being rewarded.
 You are being rewarded. You are being rewarded.
 He is being rewarded. They are being rewarded.

受動態過去進行時候

句主之數 句主人稱	單	複
第一人稱	"Was being" + Past Participle	"Were being" + Past Participle
第二人稱	"Were being" + Past Participle	"Were being" + Past Participle
第三人稱	"Was being" + Past Participle	"Were being" + Past Participle

例: I was being rewarded. We were being rewarded.
 You were being rewarded. You were being rewarded.
 He was being rewarded. They were being rewarded.

受動態未來進行時候,以及三個完了進行時候,大概皆屏而不用,以其"shall or will be being" + past participle, "have been being" + past participle等所結合之音,粗而且陋,故其構造公式,亦無規定。此類時候,倘或意義上必須需用時,則以他式代之,例如下列二句,受動態既無此種語法,當然須另易他種語法,以達其意也。

1. The other ship *will be being built* next year.
其他一船明年將正在建造中。
2. This ship *has been being built* since last year.
此船自去年以至於今正在建造中。

替代語法:

1. a. They *will be building* the other ship next year. (自動態)
 b. The other ship *will be building* next year. (形爲自動意乃受動)
 c. The building of the other ship *will be going on* next year.
 d. The other ship *will be in the course of construction* next year.
2. a. They *have been building* this ship since last year. (自動態)
 b. The ship *has been building* since last year. (形爲自動意乃受動)
 c. The building of this ship *has been going on* since last year.
 d. This ship *has been in the course of construction* since last year.

受動態現在進行時候與過去進行時候，亦常以前舉四種語法替代之，其例如下：

The ship *is or was being built*.
 = They *are or were building* the ship.
 = The ship *is or was building*.
 = The building of the ship *is or was going on*.
 = The ship *is or was in the course of construction*.

註：現在分詞，不含受動意義，亦無受動態之形，故以前受動態各時候中，並無現在進行及過去進行二時候。嗣後欲使一個受動態動詞，有繼續之意，便在该動詞過去分詞之前，加“being”而成受動態進行時候；如“being loved”其意即等於“existing in the loved state or condition.”在此式未經通行之先，受動態進行時候，往往以 active form in passive sense 之現在分詞表示之，其例如下：

1. The house *is building* (= is in a state of being built).
2. The trumpets *are sounding* (= are being sounded).
3. The cannon *are firing* (= are being fired).
4. The drums *are beating* (= are being beaten).
5. The house *is finishing* (= is being finished).
6. The book *is printing* (= is being printed).
7. The cows *are milking* (= are being milked).
8. The debt *is owing* (= is being owed).
9. The troops *are arming* (= are being armed).
10. The declaration *was reading* (= was being read).

第 九 章

USES OF THE INDEFINITE TENSES

簡單式各時候之用法

39. 簡單式各時候之意義——簡單式各時候，係概括的表示動作發生之時間，而不言動作已經完了或尙未完了等準確之狀況 (The Indefinite Tense denotes an action as one whole without showing it as complete or incomplete in relation to other actions); 其功用僅在表示一個動作的籠統時候，或現在，或過去，或未來，而不涉及其他一切情形也。

40. 簡單式各時候用法之通則——凡僅言一個動作是現在的，或已經過去的，或屬於未來的，即用簡單式時候之動詞，以表該動作可也 (Use the Indefinite Tense to express an action that is present, or that was past, or that is to come).

USES OF THE PRESENT TENSE

現在時候之用法

41. 現在時候之意義——現在時候，亦稱普遍時候，(Universal Tense)，因其所指的“現在，”是屬於普遍的現在，並非暫時的或局部的現在 (The Present Tense expresses present time with no particularization). 故“現在時候”根據其性質而論，只能用以表示一個動作或狀態，是永久現在的，或有繼續性現在的；即動作或狀態長保其常態，而不時時變易者，如天然之公理，人類之特性，習慣等是也。

“現在時候”既以表示普遍的或永久的現在爲主，所以一個動作，實際上發生於現在時候者，或在現在時候方在進行中者，照例不得用現在時候表示之也。蓋實際上發生於現在之動作，大抵爲暫時的現在，而非永久的現在，故應以現在進行時候表示之（參閱 115 節）。但現在時候，亦往往用以表示現在發生之動作，下列三種，卽其例也。

- (1) 現在時候動詞，如有表現在時候之疏狀詞 (adverb denoting present time) 以形容之者，則表示現在發生之動作。

例: *At present, I work for another person.*
現在我爲他人工作。
Now I empty the water in the jar.
現在我傾瓶中之水。

- (2) 現在時候動詞，用以描述吾人眼前所見之事物者。

例: *There comes my brother.* 吾兄來矣。
He sleeps on the bed. 他臥於牀上。

- (3) 凡無進行形之動詞 (Verbs Having no Progressive Form), 其現在時候，則表示現在發生之動作。(參閱 111 節。)

例: *I see this flower.* 我看此花。
He loves me. 他愛我。

42. 現在時候之主要用途 —— 現在時候之主要用途有二:

- (1) 用以表示一般真理 (to denote general truth or what is true at all times).
(2) 用以表示習慣動作 (to denote habitual action or regular occupation).

43. 一般真理 —— 凡屬一般真理，應以現在時候表示之 (Use the Present Indefinite Tense to express general truth). 所謂一般真理者，卽一個動作或一種狀態，不論在

何時在何處，人人都以為如是，且永不改變其常態或性質，無所謂過去，亦無所謂未來之謂也。

例：The sun *rises* in the east and *sets* in the west.

日出於東而落於西。

Two and two *make* four.

二加二成四。

The earth *moves* round the sun.

地球繞日而轉。

Knowledge *is* power.

學問即權力。

第一例句解釋——自從世界開闢以來，日出於東方，落於西方，二個動作，未嘗絲毫有所變更，自現在至未來，恐亦決不有所變更也。過去如此，現在亦如此，未來或亦如此，且人人皆以為如此；故此類動作，係屬 general truth，應以現在時候表示之也。

註：敘述自然科學之文字，其中動詞，大都悉係現在時候，以其所論者，皆關真理也。

44. 習慣動作——凡屬一切有規則的習慣動作，應以現在時候表示之 (Use the Present Indefinite Tense to express habitual actions). 所謂習慣動作者，係指吾人每日例行之事，或日常習為之動作，或指個人所有之特性等。此類動作，恆能維持相當時間而不變，決非暫時一現也，故亦無所謂過去或未來。習慣動作，分為下列四種：

(1) 習慣 (Habits)

例：He *rises* and *sleeps* early. (=He is an early riser and sleeper.)

他早起早睡。

He *works* hard. (=He is a hard worker.)

他勤於工作。

He *does not smoke*. (=He is not a smoker.)

他不吸煙。

He *drinks* much. (=He is a great drinker.)

他善飲酒。

第一例句解釋——早起早睡，是他平素習以為常的動作，每早每夜如是，非一日或二日暫時行的行為。

(2) 品格 (Character)

例：He *keeps* his word. (=He is a man of his word.)

他常守約。

He *tells* lies. (=He is a liar.)

他慣說謊。

He *flatters*. (=He is a flatterer.)

他好諂媚。

He *doubts* everything. (= He is a man without determination.)

他事事懷疑。

第一例句解釋 — 他能踐其所許之約而不食言者，是他的優良高尚之人格，不論何時何事，言行必一致，非暫時的假飾行爲。

(3) 才能 (Attainments)

例： He *writes* a good style. (=He is a good writer.)

他善作文章。

He *swims* well. (=He is a good swimmer.)

他善游泳。

He *speaks* fluently. (=He is a good speaker.)

他演說流暢。

He *dances* well. (=He is a good dancer.)

他善跳舞。

第一例句解釋 — 他善作文章，是他平素習練之結果，亦係他的天賦之才能，非一時偶然的行爲。

(4) 職業 (Occupation)

例： He *teaches* English. (=He is a teacher of English.)

他教英文。

He *edits* a paper. (=He is an editor.)

他編輯報紙。

He *deals* in silk. (=He is a dealer in silk.)

他經營絲業。

He *manages* a school. (=He is a school manager.)

他辦理學校。

第一例句解釋 — 教授英文，是他的固定之職業，非一日或二日之暫時工作也。

OTHER USES OF THE PRESENT TENSE

現在時候之其他用途

45. 現在時候替代過去時候 (Present instead of Past)

—— 過去已往之動作，理應用過去時候動詞表示之，方合

動作發生時候之原則。但有時吾人敘述過去之時物，欲使過去的動作活現於眼簾之前，宛若發生於現時，以求文章之生氣，可用現在時候動詞，替代過去時候動詞，以描寫過去之動作。此種用法，稱曰歷史的現在 (Historical Present)。

例：The life boat still *needs* one man. Ned Brown *wishes* to fill the place. But first he *bends* gently to a woman who *stands* beside him, and *says* to her, "Mother, will you let me go?"

此隻救生船仍需一人，奈特自願承其乏；但彼先向立於彼傍之婦人前，微屈其身，然後對之曰，“母親，你願讓我去乎。”

Cæsar *leaves* Gaul; *crosses* the Rubicon; and *enters* Italy with 5,000 men.

愷撒離開葛爾 (Gaul); 渡過盧比康 (Rubicon) 河; 率兵五千而入意大利。

釋例 一 上列二句，所述之事，俱屬過去，故其中動詞，理應皆用過去式；茲作者均代以現在時候動詞，其目的無非欲使過去的動作，歷歷活現於眼前，宛如作者親眼目睹也。

註：現在時候替代過去時候，非文法上之方法，乃修辭之作用，以求事蹟之逼真，文章之生氣也。

46. 現在時候替代未來時候 (Present instead of Future)

——現在時候替代未來時候，可分二種用法。

- (1) 凡 “go,” “come,” “start,” “leave,” “depart,” “return” 等一類表示行動之動詞 (verbs of locomotion)，用於未來時候時，常以現在時候代之，如此可表示其未來之動作，較為確定；但句中往往須另加表示未來時候之疏狀詞 (adverbs denoting future time) 以形容之，俾時間上之關係，更形明顯也。

例：He *returns* next week. (=He will return next week.)

他將於下星期回來。

The ship *sails* on Saturday. (= The ship will sail on Saturday.)

此船將於星期六起碇。

What time *do* you *start*? (= What time will you start?)

你將在何時動身。

When *do* you *leave* here? (= When will you leave here?)

你將於何時離此。

釋例 — 未來動作，就現在而論，本不十分確定，蓋不能預先斷定其事之必有或必無也。今如第一句他之回來，第二句船之起碇，雖俱爲未來動作，但事固極確定，以其句中之動詞，皆用現在式以代未來式故也。

- (2) 凡以 “if,” “when,” “while,” “before,” “after,” “till,” “as soon as” 等一類聚合詞 (conjunction) 所接引之表時間或表條件疏狀子句 (adverbial clause of time and condition) 中，如其動詞，爲未來時候，亦得以現在時候代之。

例: I will not go *if it rains*. (=if it will rain.)

如天雨我決不去。

Please wait *till I come back*. (=till I shall come back.)

請待至我回來。

What shall I say to him *when he comes*? (=when he will come.)

他來時我對他說什麼呢。

You will take a cup of tea *before you go*. (=before you will go.)

你未去之先可喝一杯茶。

註一: 凡名詞子句 (noun clause) 由此類聚合詞所接引者，其中動詞，如爲未來時候，不得以現在時候代之，蓋其所言之未來動作不甚確定也。

例: 名詞子句 疏狀子句

I do not know *when he will come*. We should welcome him *when he comes*.

我不知他何時能來。

他來時我們應歡迎之。

I think *he will return soon*. We must wait *till he returns*.

我想他不久即回。

我們必須等到他回來。

註二: 凡疏狀子句 (adverbial clause) 由此類聚合詞所接引者，其中動詞，如爲未來時候，而同時含有意志 (volition) 之意義者，亦不得以現在時候代之。

例: I shall be glad *if you will do so*.

倘你願如是爲之則我快慰矣。

He must work hard *before he shall get his pay*

他未領工資之前他必須勤於工作。

釋例一在“if you will do so”與“before he shall get his pay”二個疏狀子句中，“will do”與“shall get”不僅表示未來動作，而且含有意志作用；前者係言“you”是否願意爲此，後者係言“he”須受 speaker (第一人稱發言者) 意志之約束。

47. 現在時候替代現在完了時候 (Present instead of Present Perfect)——“Say,” “tell,” “hear,” “be told,” “write,” “read,” “forget,” “remark,” “find”一類少數動詞，在日常談話中 (in familiar style)，常含混的表示由何人或何處聽得或傳來之消息，而不實指該動詞所示之動作。此類動詞如此用法，其時候如爲現在完了，恆以現在時候代之，其意義與漢文之“據云，”“傳聞”一類語法大致相同。

例：I *hear* (= have heard = people say) that he is going to resign his post.

我聞他擬即行辭職。

I *read* (= have read) in the papers (= I learn from the papers) that you have been promoted.

我閱報知君已高陞矣。

釋例一 第一句中之“hear,” 就時間關係上論，應爲現在完了時候“have heard,” 因我聞他之擬辭職，發生在我現在發言之前也。但此處“hear”係指從他人處傳來之消息，非指“hear”之實在動作，故代以現在時候。

試再比較下列句語，則現在時候之代替現在完了時候，與尋常現在完了時候，其意義上不同之點，更爲明顯矣。

- | | | | |
|----|---|---|-----------|
| a. | { | I <i>hear</i> = People say = 據云。 | (現在代現在完了) |
| | { | I <i>have heard</i> = Some one has told me = 有人業經告我 = 我已聽其言矣。 | (尋常現在完了) |
| b. | { | I <i>forget</i> his name = I do not remember it = 我忘却他之名。 | (現在代現在完了) |
| | { | I <i>have forgotten</i> it = I cannot recollect it = 他的名我終不能憶想起來。 | (尋常現在完了) |

48. 現在時候替代未來完了時候 (Present instead of Future Perfect)——凡以“when,” “after,” “till,” “as soon as”等契合詞所接引之疏狀子句中，如其動詞爲未來完了時候，得以現在時候代之。

例: I will go with you after I *eat* my supper. (= after I shall have eaten my supper.)

待我吃了晚飯之後，決與你同去。

I will go home as soon as I *finish* my task. (= as soon as I shall have finished my task.)

一俟完了我的工作，我即返家。

現在時候用法簡表

{	普通用途	—— 表示確在現在發生之動作	{ 1. 附加表示現在時候之疏狀詞 2. 敘述眼前所見之事物 3. 無進行形之動詞
	主要用途	—— { 1. 表示一般真理 2. 表示習慣動作	{ 1. 習慣 2. 品格 3. 才能 4. 職業
	其他用途	—— { 1. 替代過去時候 (Historical Present) 2. 替代未來時候 3. 替代現在完了時候 4. 替代未來完了時候	

USES OF THE PAST TENSE

過去時候之用法

49. 過去時候之意義——過去時候之獨一用途，是表示已經過去的動作，或往昔的狀態。此種動作或狀態，在當時動作發生時，固實有其事，但到現在，是否仍有其事，則成疑問矣。總之過去時候之基本意義，在言一個動作或狀態，為已經過去的，對於現在時候，絕對不發生任何關係者也 (The Past Indefinite Tense denotes an action or state that was formerly true, but may or may not now be true. This tense generally gives no information about the present).

例: He *had* a son. 從前他有一子。 (狀態)
 He *bought* a book last week. 上星期他購一書。 (動作)

釋例 一 從前他有一子，固極確實之事。但現在他是否仍有一子，則不知矣。或尙生存，或已死亡。

上星期他確購了一書，而現在他並不購書也。

註一：過去時候，只能用以表示已經過去與現在毫不相關之動作或狀態；凡動作或狀態雖係過去，而與現在時候，稍有連帶關係者，不得以過去時候表示之也。

註二：過去時候既為表示過去事物之主要時候，故歷史之記載，故事之敘述，大都非用過去時候不可，因此亦稱歷史的或記事的時候 (Historical or Narrative Tense)。

50. 過去時候之確定 —— 凡用過去時候敘述過去動作時，句中務須另加表示確定的過去時間之疏狀詞 (adverbs denoting some definite past time) 以限制之，俾動作在過去時候發生之時間，得以明顯也。緣過去時候之範圍，非常廣泛；一分鐘一句鐘以前，是過去；一日一月以前，亦是過去；一年百年甚至無數年以前，亦是過去。故欲詳知一個動作，究在過去何時發生，勢非另加表確定過去時間之疏狀詞不可。如云 “He came,” 此句僅言他係從前來的，但未明言究係從前何時來，故過去時間，異常含混。倘云 “He came yesterday,” 有 “yesterday” 一字，則動作發生之時間，比較確定也。但有時不另加疏狀詞，僅憑上文下文之意義，亦可推測動作在過去時候發生之時間，如 “He died last year,” “He died of consumption” (他死於去年，他死於癆病)；後一句中之 “died,” 其發生時間，可從前一句中，推測之也，不必另加疏狀詞以限制之。

51. 過去時候之誤用 —— 過去動作，如其重要意義不在乎動作本身，而在因動作所起之結果或狀況者，不得以過去時候表示之。蓋此種結果或狀況，往往對現在時候，有連帶關係也。

例:	正	誤
	He <i>is</i> dead.	He <i>died</i> .
	他死了.	他死.
	He <i>has gone</i> to America.	He <i>went</i> to America.
	他已赴美.	他赴美國.

釋例一 “He is dead” 一句謂他早已死了，即現在他不在人世，其意注重在動作之結果，既死當然不在人間了，故死於何時何處，可置之不問也。“He died” 一句，其意注重在動作之本身，如不申明死之時，或死之地，則句誤矣。

52. 過去習慣動作表示法 (Past Habitual Action)——
過去習慣動作（即從前曾有此種習慣而今不復有矣）之表示，其法有二。

(1) 用 “Used” + Infinitive.

例: He *used to play* football when he was in school. (=He was in the habit of playing....)

當他在校時他常戲足球。

I *used to be* sick last year. (=I was in the habit of being....)

去年我常常患病。

註一: Infinitive = “to” + root verb. (不定動詞)

註二: 此處 “used” 係 predicate verb, 其過去式, 可用以表示過去習慣動作。至其現在式 “use” + infinitive, 英文中無此語法, 不能用以表示現在習慣動作。

(2) 用 “Would” + Root Verb. 以此式表示過去習慣動作, 句中常加 “often,” “sometimes” 等一類疏狀詞以陪襯之。

例: He *would come* here every day. (= He was in the habit of coming....)

他每日來此。

He *would study* in the night. (= He was in the habit of studying....)

他恆在夜間讀書。

註一: 習慣動作, 可分有規則的與不規則的二種; 前者指常作之事, 後者指屢有之事。現在習慣動作之表示, 有規則的, 用現在時候; 不規則的, 用 “will” + root. 過去習慣動作, 有規則的, 用 “used” + infinitive 表示之, 不規則的用 “would” + root.

註二: 過去動作, 與過去習慣動作, 其意義微有不同, 試比較下列三句, 當能悟其異點也。

He *rose* at six o'clock this morning. (過去動詞)

今晨他六時起身。

He *used to rise* early.

他常早起

He *would rise* early.

他每每早起

(過去習慣動作)

除“used”+infinitive 與“would”+root 二式外，簡單式過去時候 (simple past tense) 亦可用以表示過去習慣動作，但究較前二式爲少耳。

例: Formerly people *ate* (= used to eat) without forks and knives.

從前人人不用刀叉而食。

He *got up* (= used to get up) very early every day when young.

他年幼時每日早起。

53. 過去時候替代過去進行時候 (Past instead of Past Progressive) —— 簡單式過去時候，常用以替代過去進行時候，以表在過去某時候方在進行之動作。

例: He *read* while I *wrote*. (=He was reading while I was writing.)

我正寫字之時他方在閱書。

I *danced* while he *sang*. (= I was dancing while he was singing.)

他方在唱歌之時我正在跳舞

USES OF FUTURE TENSE

未來時候之用法

54. 未來時候之意義——未來時候者，用以表示吾人所預期將發生於未來之動作或狀態也，意謂在出言之時或在現在 (now or at the time of speaking)，所言之動作或狀態，尙未見諸實現也。此種未來，稱曰現在之未來 (what is now future).

例: I *shall go* tomorrow. 明日我將去。
 He *will be* twenty next year. 明年他將二十歲矣。

釋例 — 明日明年俱係未來時候，在發表以上二語之時，“go”所指之動作與“be”所指之狀態，皆尚未實現，一須俟之明日，一須俟之明年也。故“go”與“be”應為未來式“shall go”與“will be,”方符所言之原意也。

55. 未來時候之起源——古代英文，並無未來時候，所有關於一切未來動作，概以簡單式現在時候表示之(參閱第46節)。迨後“shall”與“will”作為未來時候助動詞，英文文法中始有正式未來時候，即第一人稱，規定以“shall”+root 為未來式；第二第三人稱，以“will”+root 為未來式。至“shall”與“will,”雖為作成未來時候之工具，而其內容意義極形複雜，簡括言之，則得下列二種。

- (1) 吾人祇預言或預期未來將有或必有之事 (to simply announce, foretell, or express our expectation of what is to happen).
- (2) 吾人決意使某事發生於未來 (to express our determination to bring about the event ourselves).
 以“shall”或“will”作成之未來時候如第一種者，曰純粹未來或無意志未來 (simple or non-volitional futurity), 如第二種者曰意志未來 (volitional futurity).

註: 無意志未來所表示者，為純粹未來，並無其他意義著於其中 (Non-Volitional Futurity expresses merely future time and nothing more) 意志未來所表示者，除未來外，尚含有其他意義，如意志，應許，命令等 (Volitional Futurity combines future time with implied determination, promise, command, etc.).

56. 未來動作之種類——根據前節所述二層意義，未來動作，分為二種。

- (1) 未來動作不受發言者之約束 (即無意志未來) (future actions independent of the speaker's control), 其公式為:

第一人稱 I shall.
 第二人稱 You will.
 第三人稱 He will.

- 例: I *shall meet* him this evening.
 今晚我將遇見他。
 You *will meet* him this evening.
 今晚你將遇見他。
 He *will meet* her this evening.
 今晚他將遇見她。

- (2) 未來動作受發言者意志之約束 (即意志未來)
 (future actions determined by the speaker), 其公式恰與第一種公式相反, 即為:

第一人稱 I will.
 第二人稱 You shall.
 第三人稱 He shall.

- 例: I *will go* to see him at once.
 我決立即去見他。
 You *shall go* to see him.
 你應去見他。
 He *shall go* to see her.
 他應去見她。

註: 第二種未來動作, 在第一人稱, 固隨發言者自己之意志而行使動作, 即在第二第三人稱, 亦須聽發言者之意志, 非任意可以行動也。

第一種未來動作 (即無意志未來), 雖不受發言者之約束, 但往往亦有須承行為者 (agent or subject of the predicate verb) 之意志, 故此種未來動作, 又可分為二種:

- (1) a. 未來動作不受任何人的約束, 即不受發言者之約束, 亦不受行為者之約束 (future actions independent of all personal control, that is of the agent's as well as of the speaker's control), 其公式為:

第一人稱 I shall.
 第二人稱 You will.
 第三人稱 He will.

此種未來動作所示者，為未來必須有的動作，即動作非吾人力之所能約束者 (necessary actions or those outside of our control).

- (1) b. 未來動作受行為者意志之約束 (future actions determined by the agent), 其公式為:

第一人稱 I will.

第二人稱 You will.

第三人稱 He will.

此種未來動作，謂動作悉憑主事者之意志，絲毫不受他人或外界之拘束。

例: (1) a. I shall need more money next month.

下月我將需要更多銀錢。

You will need the money very soon.

不久你將需要銀錢矣。

He will fail this time.

此次他將落第。

- (2) b. I will do my best.

我決盡我之力。

You say you will not do so again.

你謂你決不再為此。

He says he will try.

他云他決勉力。

綜括以上所述，將二種未來動作之公式，總彙一表於下。

未來動作 種類 句 主 人 稱	1. Non-Volition 無意志未來		2. Speaker's Volition
	a. 純粹未來 動作完全不 受人的約束	b. 未來 動作受行為者 意志之約束	未來 動作受發言者 意志之約束
第一人稱	I shall	I will	I will
第二人稱	You will	You will	You shall
第三人稱	He will	He will	He shall

NON-VOLITIONAL FUTURITY

無意志未來

1. a. "I shall," "You will," "He will"

57. "I shall," "You will," "He will" 之意義——
"I shall," "you will," "he will" 三式所表示者，係勢所
必有的或不得不有的未來動作，對行使動作者本人之意志，
並無若何關係。至其所包含之意義，計有下列八種：

(1) 必須有之事 (Necessity)

例: *If I fail, I shall have to wait another year.*

倘我不及格我將勢必再等一年

You will need more money if you are not more careful.

如你不格外注意你勢需要更多金錢。

He will have to leave school, if he does not pass this time.

此次他如再不及格他勢必須退學。

(2) 能力 (Ability)

例: *I shall be able to come tomorrow.*

明日我當能來。

You will soon be able to speak English.

你即能說英語矣。

He will not be able to find the house, if you do not tell him the exact address.

如你不告他正確地址他恐不能尋著此屋也。

(3) 情感 (Emotion)

例: *I shall be greatly obliged, if you will help me.*

你如肯助我則感激不盡矣。

You will be glad to do so.

此事你必樂為之。

Your parents will be delighted to hear of your success

你雙親必樂聞你的成功。

(4) 期望 (Expectation)

- 例: I hope I *shall* succeed.
我望我可成功。
- I hope you *will be* more fortunate next time.
我望下次你能更爲有幸。
- I hope he *will pass* this time.
我望此次他可及格。

(5) 義務 (Duty)

- 例: I *shall go* to my office tomorrow.
明日我將上公事房。
- I think you *will not go* to school tomorrow.
我想你明日不必上學。
- My brother can not go with you, for he *will be* present at the meeting.
吾弟不能與你同往因其須赴會也。

(6) 豫定 (Prearrangement)

- 例: I *shall be* at Shanghai next summer.
明年夏季我將在上海。
- I think you *will return* in September.
我想你於九月可回矣。
- He *will not be* at home tomorrow morning.
明晨他不在家。
- 註: 比較 { I will go = I am willing or determined to go.
(願去或決去)
I shall go = I go because I must or ought.
(應去或必去)

(7) 自然之結果 (Natural Result)

- 例: If I work too hard, I *shall kill* myself. (= I shall die in consequence.)
倘我工作過力我勢必殺身。
- If you overwork yourself, you *will make* yourself sick.
如你工作過分你將罹病。
- If he tries to bend a piece of chalk, he *will break* it.
如他扭曲一枝粉筆他必折斷之。

註: 比 { I will kill myself = I will commit suicide. (自殺)
較 { I shall kill myself = I shall die in consequence. (自然結果)

(8) 受動 (Passive)

例: If I am late, I *shall be punished*.
倘我遲到我將受罰。
If you do your duty, you *will be rewarded*.
如你能盡職你當受獎。
He *will be blamed*, if he neglects his duty.
他如不盡職他將受責。

1. b. "I will," "You will," "He will"

58. "I will," "You will," "He will" 之意義——“I will,” “you will,” “he will” 三式，係表示未來動作，為行為者本人意志所決定者 (to express determination on the part of the agent), 其所包含之意義，計有下列六種：

(1) 選擇 (Choice)

例: If you will take that one, I *will take* this one.
如你選取那個我即取這個。
He says he *will take* the smallest one.
他云他願取最小者。

(2) 允許 (Promise)

例: I *will pay* you at the end of the month.
我決於月底付款與你。
He says he *will lend* me the money I need.
他說他當借給我需要之款。

(3) 決心 (Resolution)

例: I *will accomplish* my purpose at any cost.
無論如何我決完成我的目的。
He says he *will never speak* to her again.
他說他決不再與她交談矣。

(4) 供獻 (Offer)

例: *I will lend you any sum you may need.*

無論你需款若干我決借給你。

I will do anything for you.

不論何事我願為你效力。

(5) 承諾 (Consent)

例: *I will undertake the work.*

我可擔任此事。

Will you lend me one dollar? Of course, I will.

你肯假我一元乎。 我當然肯。

(6) 恐嚇 (Threat)

例: *I will kill you.*

我要殺你。

He says he will punish you.

他說他要罰你。

VOLITIONAL FUTURITY

意志未來

2. "I will," "You shall," "He shall"

59. "I will" 之意義——"I will" 所表示之未來動作，係基於發言者之意志者，如發言者將決為某事或願為某事是也 (to denote future actions dependent on the speaker's will as determination or willingness). (參閱 58 節.)

例: a. *I will kill you.* (= I am determined to kill you.) (決心)
我決意殺你。

b. *I will spare you.* (= I am willing to spare you.) (願意)
我願恕你。

(a) 表示決心者，大概為下列四種：

(1) 選擇 (Choice)

I will take this one.

我決取這一個。

(2) 喜悅 (Preference)

I *will die* first.
我決先死。

(3) 決心 (Resolution)

I *will never do* this again.
我決不再爲此。

(4) 恐嚇 (Threat)

I *will beat* you.
我要打你。

(b) 表示願意者，大概爲下列四種：

(1) 承諾 (Consent)

Yes, I *will do* so.
然，我願爲此。

(2) 推却 (Refusal)

No, I *won't do* so.
否，我不願爲此。

(3) 允許 (Promise)

I *will pay* your wages tomorrow.
明日我付你工資。

(4) 供獻 (Offer)

I *will lend* you any book you may need.
你需要何書我都可借給你。

註：We will = Let us.

例：Let us (= We will) go to theatre.
我們不如赴劇場。

60. “You shall,” “He shall”之意義——“You shall,” “he shall” 二式，大概係表示發言者對行爲者所施之約束或控制 (to denote the speaker's control over the agent),

其動作完全受發言者意志之支配, “you” 與 “he” 惟有聽之而行使或承受動作, 本人意志絕無一些自由伸縮之餘地也 (參閱 56 節之註). 故就其實在意義論之,

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{You shall} = \text{I will let (or make)} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{you.} \\ \text{He shall} = \text{I will let (or make)} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{him.} \end{array} \right\} \text{或} = \text{I will ...} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{you.} \\ \text{him.} \end{array} \right.$$

例: *You shall have this book.*
 = I will let you have this book.
 = I will give you this book.
 你可有此書。

He shall die.
 = I will make him die.
 = I will kill him.
 他應死。

“You shall,” “he shall” 二式, 大都係表示應許或恐嚇 (或威逼) (The volitional “shall” expresses a promise or threat (or compulsion), 即發言者對行爲者 “you” or “he” 所發之 “應許” 或 “恐嚇” 是也. 欲辨別孰爲應許, 孰爲恐嚇, 須視句中意義或語氣而定. 大概有利於行爲者, 即爲應許, 否則爲恐嚇。

例: (應許)

You shall be rewarded.
 = I will reward you.
 你應受獎。

You shall do so if you wish to.
 = I will let you do so if you wish to.
 如你願意你儘可如此爲之。

He shall live.
 = I will let him live.
 他應生存。

(恐嚇)

He shall be punished.

= I will punish him.

他應受罰。

You shall do so whether you will or not.

= I will make you do so whether you will or not.

不管你願否你必須如此爲之。

He shall die.

= I will make him die.

他應死。

“Shall not” 表示禁止 (prohibition), 即發言者不許行爲者 (“you” or “he”) 爲某事之意, 故 “shall not” 實等於 “I will not allow.”

例: *You shall not set foot in this house again.*

= I will not allow you to set foot in this house.

你不許再踏入此屋。

He shall not leave the house without my permission.

= I will not allow him to leave the house.

未得我之許可他不得擅離此屋。

“You shall,” “he shall” 除表示 “應許” 或 “恐嚇” 外, 尚有一種受動意義 (passive meaning), 即發言者本人爲實行動作者, 而句主 “you” 或 “he” 不過處於被動地位耳。

例: *You shall see how it ought to be done.*

= I will show you how it ought to be done.

= I will let you see how it ought to be done.

= You shall be shown how it ought to be done.

你當明白此應如何做。

You shall have my answer in a few days.

= I will give you my answer in a few days.

= I will let you have my answer in a few days.

= You shall be given my answer in a few days.

二三日內你當可有我的回答。

He shall die.

= I will kill him.

= I will let him die.

= He shall be killed.

他應死。

The boy *shall* go to school next spring.

= I will send the boy to school next spring.

= I will let the boy go to school next spring.

= The boy shall be sent to school next spring.

明春此童應當入學。

註：在“you shall,” “he shall”中，其動作亦偶有不受發言者意志之支配者，其例如下，若細玩上下文意義，動作受何人意志之支配，可瞭然也。

例：He says you *shall* have an answer tomorrow.

他說明日你當可有回音。

They have decided that you *shall* be sent abroad.

他們已決定送你出洋。

He has told me that you *shall* have an increase of salary next month.

他已告我下月你可增加薪水。

The general has given orders that the army *shall* embark at daybreak.

軍長業已令兵隊於拂曉登舟。

61. 未來與非未來 (Future and not Future)——凡以助動詞“shall”或“will”做成之未來動作，其實行乃受發言者或行為者意志之約束者，不得視為真正未來，因動作可隨人之意志而變動也。故前述二種未來動作中，僅第一種(a)可謂真正未來；至第一種(b)與第二種，俱非未來，蓋其中含有意志作用也。

真 未 來

1. (a) (無人的約束)

I shall

You will

He will

非 未 來

1. (b) (受行為者意志之約束) 2 (受發言者意志之約束)

I will

I will

You will

You shall

He will

He shall

“SHALL” AND “WILL” IN QUESTIONS

疑問句中之“Shall” and “Will”

62. 未來動作之種類——疑問句中以“shall”或“will”做成之未來時候，與前述直敘句(declarative sentence)中之未來時候相比較，有一顯著之異點，即人的約束轉移是也：由受發言者意志之約束，轉移到受被問者意志之約束(Determination on the part of the speaker is transferred to that on the part of the person addressed).

疑問句中之未來動作，亦分爲無意志未來與意志未來二種。

- (1) 無意志未來——吾人祇問未來將有或必有之事，其動作不受被問者意志之約束(即純粹未來[simple future])。
- (2) 意志未來——吾人問被問者是否意欲使某事發生於未來，其動作受被問者意志之約束。

此二種未來動作中，“shall”與“will”之分配公式，茲特列表於下。

未來動作 句主 種類 人稱		Non-Volitional 無意志未來		Volitional 意志未來	
		問	答	問	答
第二	第一	Shall you?	I shall	Will you?	I will
第一	第二	Shall I?	You will	Shall I?	You shall
第三	第三	Will he?	He will	Shall he?	He shall

觀於上表，可以發見以下三點：

- (1) 疑問句中第二人稱，與回答句中第一人稱相對，而疑問句中第一人稱則與回答句中第二人稱相對。

- (2) 除“Shall I,” “You will”外，所有疑問暨其相對答句中之助動詞，均屬一律，即 shall 對 shall, will 對 will.
- (3) 在第一人稱並無 Will I? 之一式，蓋個人之意志斷無詢問別人之理也。

NON-VOLITIONAL FUTURITY

無意志未來

“Shall you?” “Shall I?” “Will he?”

63. “Shall you?” “Shall I?” “Will he?” 之意義——
“Shall you?” “Shall I?” “Will he?” 係用以問對方未來將有或必有之動作，其所包含之意義，計有六種。

(1) 必須有之事 (Necessity)

例: *Shall you need your pen and ink this evening?*
今晚你需要你的筆墨否。

Ans. I shall need....

When *shall I have to serve in the army?*

何時我應服役於軍隊。

Ans. You will have to serve....

How much money *will he need* in school?

他在學校需銀若干。

Ans. He will need....

(2) 能力 (Ability)

例: *Shall you be able to pay me by the end of the month?*
月底你能付款與我否。

Ans. I shall be able....

When *shall I be able to read such books?*

何時我能讀這類書呢。

Ans. You will be able to read....

When *will he be able to speak English?*

何時他能說英語呢。

Ans. He will be able to speak..

(3) 情感 (Emotion)

- 例: *Shall you not be glad to see him?*
你是否喜見他。
Ans. I shall be glad....
Will he be angry if I disobey him?
如我不服從他他將怒否。
Ans. He will not be....

(4) 義務 (Duty)

- 例: *Shall you go to school tomorrow?*
明日你赴校否。
Ans. I shall go....

(5) 豫定 (Prearrangement)

- 例: *Where shall you be during the holidays?*
假中你將在何處。
Ans. I shall be....
Will he be at home in the afternoon?
午後他在家否。
Ans. He will be at....

(6) 自然之結果 (Natural Result)

- 例: *Shall I die, if I swallow this poison?*
倘我吞服此毒藥我將死否。
Ans. You will die....
Will he lose much by the bankruptcy of that bank?
銀行倒閉他蒙大損失否。
Ans. He will lose much....

VOLITIONAL FUTURITY

意志未來

“Will you?” “Shall I?” “Shall he?”

64. “Will you?”之意義——“Will you?”係用以問對

方之意志或決心 (It inquires about the second person's will or determination), 其動作之行使權在於被問者, 故答句中必爲 "I will".

- | | |
|---|--|
| 例: <i>Will you see him?</i> | No, I <i>won't</i> . |
| 你願見他否。 | 否, 不願。 |
| <i>Will you consent?</i> | No, I <i>will</i> never <i>consent</i> . |
| 你肯允諾否。 | 否, 我決不允諾。 |
| <i>Will you assist me in this matter?</i> | Yes, I <i>will</i> . |
| 此事你肯助我乎。 | 可, 我決助你。 |

至 "Will you" 所表示之意義, 則爲以下四種:

(1) 請求 (Request).

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 例: <i>Will you help me?</i> | <i>Ans. I will</i> |
| 你肯助我乎。 | |
| <i>Will you lend me your dictionary?</i> | |
| 你肯借我你的字典乎。 | |

註一: "Would you?" 亦常用以表示請求者, 但較之 "Will you?" 更爲客氣耳。

註二: 表示請求尙有他種語法, 茲特略舉於下, 以資比較, 惟意義大致相同, 無甚區別也。

Will you	}	lend	}	me your dictionary?
Will you please				
Will you kindly				
Will you be so kind as to				
Will you be good enough to				
Will you have the goodness to				
Will you do me the favor of	lending			

(2) 邀請 (Invitation).

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 例: <i>Won't you come out for a walk?</i> | <i>Ans. I will</i> |
| 你願出來散步乎。 | |
| <i>Will you dine with me this evening?</i> | |
| 今晚你可同我吃飯否。 | |

(3) 應許 (Promise).

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 例: <i>Will you be more careful in future?</i> | <i>Ans. I will</i> |
| 將來你能格外當心否。 | |

Shall I have the position?
= *Will you let me have the position?*
我可有此位置否。

Ans. Yes, you shall have it.

66. “Shall he?” 之意義——“Shall he?” 之意義與用法，完全與前節之“Shall I?” 意義與用法相同，其動作之支配權，亦在於被問者。

- (1) “Shall he...?” = “Do you wish him to...?” 動作之行使者，固為“he,” 而發問者 (speaker) 亦參與其間。如此用法，對方之答語，常為間接命令式“Let him....”

例: *What shall he do?* (= *What do you wish him to do?*)
他應為何事呢。

Ans. Let him do that.

When shall he come? (= *When do you wish him to come?*)
他應何時來呢。

Ans. Let him come this evening.

- (2) “Shall he...?” = “Will you let him...?” 動作之行使者為被問者。如此用法，對方之答語，必為“He shall.”

例: *Shall he know the truth?* (= *Will you let him know the truth?*)
他可知其真相否。

Ans. Yes, he shall know it.

When shall your son go to school? (= *When will you let your son go to school?*)
令耶何時入校。

Ans. He shall go to school next spring.

“Shall I?,” “Shall he?” 之二種用法並其對方答語方式，列表如下。

問	答
<i>Shall I?</i> =	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Do you wish me to...?} \\ \text{Will you let me...?} \end{array} \right. \begin{array}{l} \text{— 命令式} \\ \text{— You shall....} \end{array}$
<i>Shall he?</i> =	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Do you wish him to...?} \\ \text{Will you let him...?} \end{array} \right. \begin{array}{l} \text{— Let him....} \\ \text{— He shall....} \end{array}$

OTHER WAYS OF EXPRESSING FUTURITY

表示未來之其他方法

67. 不用“Shall,”“Will”表示未來法——未來動作，除以助動詞“shall”或“will”加原形動詞外，尚有下列各法可以表示之。

- (1) 用現在時候動詞 + 表未來時候疏狀詞. (參閱 46 節.)

例: He *leaves* here next Monday. (= He will leave here next Monday.)

他將於下星期一離此。

I *start* tomorrow. (= I shall start tomorrow.)

我明日動身。

- (2) 用現在進行時候以代未來時候. (參閱 118 節.)

例: When *are you going* home? (= When will you go home?)

你將於何時返家。

Are you coming tomorrow? (= Shall you come tomorrow?)

明日你來否。

- (3) 用“Be”+Simple Infinitive.

凡未來動作係先期預定而且極確定者，可用此式 (to denote future actions of previous arrangement and future fixedness).

例: We *are to have* a holiday tomorrow. (= It is fixed that we shall have a holiday tomorrow.)

明日我們一准有假。

He *is to go* soon. (= It is fixed that he should go.)

他不久就要去。

- (4) 用“Be going”+Simple Infinitive.

此式係表示意志未來，謂正將或正擬為某事之意 (denoting an immediate or intentional future).

此處“going”為一種助動詞，有正將或即擬之意。

- 例: *I am going to write a letter*
我正擬寫信。
He is going to call on you.
他即將訪你。

(5) 用“Be about”+Simple Infinitive.

此式乃指極近之未來，謂動作就將發生也。此處“about”係前置詞 (preposition)，意近也，隨後之 infinitive 爲其 object。

- 例: *He is about to die.*
他就快死了。
I am about to go to Nanking.
我就要往南京。

(6) “Be on the point of”+Gerund.

此式亦係表示極近之未來，但較之“be about”+infinitive 更爲迫切，意謂動作立即就要發生也 (“on the point of”=“very near to”)。

- 例: *He is on the point of dying.*
他立刻就要死。
I was on the point of crying out when I received the news of my father's death.
我一接到我父死亡消息我立即大哭。

註: “Gerund” 動詞名詞也，其形與現在分詞之形相同，即 root verb+“ing”是也，惟現在分詞作形容詞用而“Gerund”作名詞用耳。

FUTURE TO THE PAST

過去之未來

68. 過去之未來之構造與意義——現在之未來 (what is now future)，其構造與用法，已經詳述於前，但往往有已

經過去之動作或狀態，在當時亦視為未來 (what was then future). 此種對於過去時候之未來動作或狀態，當然不能用對現在之未來之方式 (即 “shall”+root 或 “will”+root) 表示之；故其構造，另有公式，即將 “shall” 改為過去式 “should,” “will” 改為 “would,” 再加原形動詞，便成過去之未來時候矣。至其意義與用法，完全與 “shall”+root 或 “will”+root 相同，既知彼必能悟此也。

69. 過去之未來之用途——過去之未來時候，大抵用於間接引用語 (indirect narration) 中之名詞子句 (noun clause) 或其他附屬子句 (subordinate clause) 內為多，而在獨立句語中，則不常見，因其必須依據另一個過去時候之動詞，方能對之顯示未來也。

例: He will go. (現在之未來)
他將去。
He said that he *would* go. (過去之未來)
他云他將去。

釋例——在第二例句中，“that he would go” 名詞子句也。其中動詞 “would go” 即為過去之未來時候，對 “said” 表示未來，因在 “said” 之時，“would go” 所指之動作，尚未實現也。

70. 過去之未來動作之種類——過去之未來動作，如現在之未來動作，亦分為二種。

- | | | |
|----------|---|--|
| 1. 無意志未來 | } | a. 未來動作，完全不受人的約束。
b. 未來動作，受行為者過去的意志之約束。 |
| 2. 意志未來 | } | 未來動作，受發言者過去的意志之約束。 |

“Should” 與 “Would” 之分配，茲特列表如下：

未來動作 種類 句主人稱	a. 動作完全不受 人的約束	b. 動作受行為者 過去的意志約束	c. 動作受發言者 過去的意志約束
第一人稱	“I should”+Root	“I would”+Root	“I would”+Root
第二人稱	“You would”+ Root	“You would”+ Root	“You should”+ Root
第三人稱	“He would”+ Root	“He would”+ Root	“He should”+ Root

例： a. 未來動作不受人的約束者。

I hoped that I *should* succeed.

我曾望我可成功。

比較： I hope I shall succeed.

I feared that you *would* fail.

我怕你要失敗。

比較： I fear that you will fail.

I feared that he *would* fail.

我怕他要失敗。

b. 未來動作受行為者過去意志之約束者。

I promised that I *would* do my best.

我嘗許決盡我之力。

You said that you *would* do your best.

你嘗謂你決盡你之力。

He said that he *would* do his best.

他嘗謂他決盡他之力。

c. 未來動作受發言者過去意志之約束者

I promised that I *would* lend you money

我嘗許我願貸款與你。

I promised that you *should* have my help.

我嘗許你可得我之助力。

I told him that he *should* be punished.

我曾告他他應受罰。

註： 第 67 節中之 3, 4, 5, 6, 四項，如 “be” 爲現在式，即爲現在之未來；如爲過去式，即爲過去之未來。

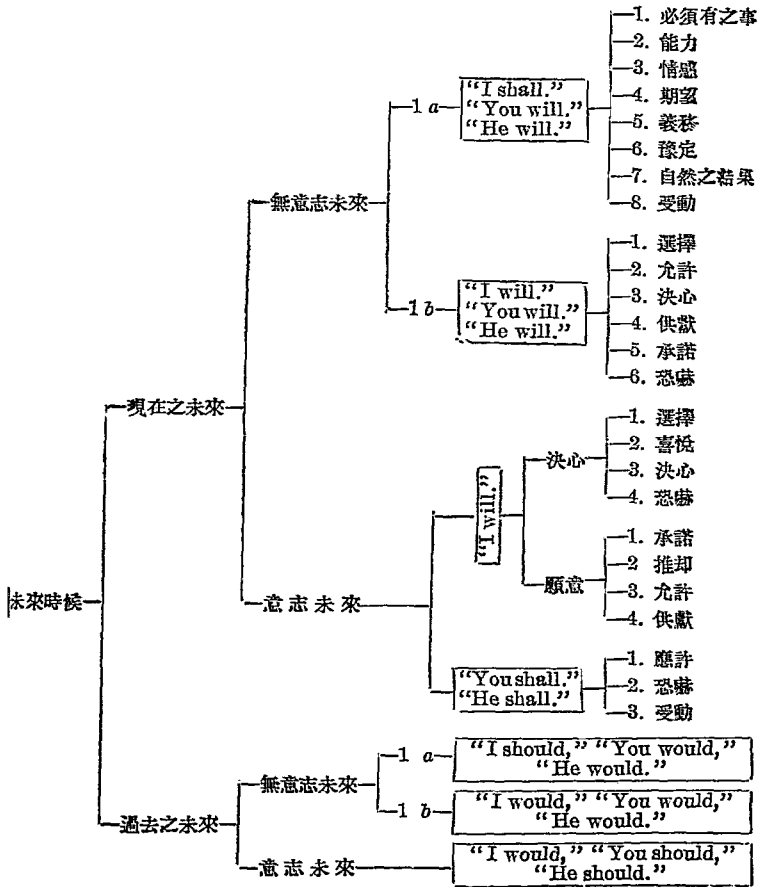
例： 現在之未來

He is to come.

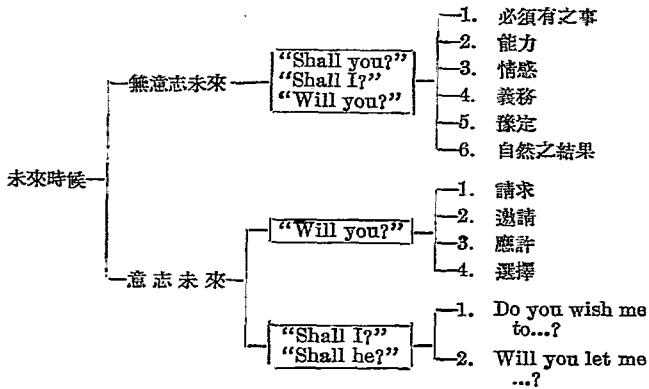
過去之未來

He was to come.

未來時候用法簡表
(甲) 直敘句中



(乙) 疑問句中



第 十 章

USES OF THE PERFECT TENSES

完了式各時候之用法

71. 完了各式時候之意義——“Perfect” 一字，意即完了或完成 (completed, finished, or done). 完了時候者，謂一個動作或狀態，在某一個指定的時間 (或現在，或過去，或未來) 已經完成或已經完了 (The Perfect Tense denotes the completion of an action or a state at a certain specified time, present, past or future), 不如簡單式時候，表示動作是籠統的，或進行式時候表示動作是方在進行中的。

72. 完了式各時候用法之通則——凡一個動作，業已完了，即用完了式時候之動詞，以表該動作可也 (Use the Perfect Tense to describe an action that is completed). 惟須注意者，即在詳察動作完了之時候耳；如動作在現在時候完

了者，應用現在完了時候之動詞；如在未來時候完了者，應用未來完了時候之動詞是也。

例：I *have eaten* my dinner (now). (現在完了)
我已吃了午飯。

釋例—吃飯動作，在現在 (“now” or “at the time of speaking” 發言之時) 已經完了。但實際上 “now” 一字，毋須提明，蓋出言之時，已包含 “now” 在內，故出言之時，即為動作完了之時也 (The Present Perfect Tense denotes the completion of an action at the time of speaking; or the time of speaking is that at which the action is completed).

When you came to my home last night, I *had eaten* my supper. (過去完了)

昨夜你來我家時我已吃了夜飯。

釋例—“When you came....”，是表明過去的指定時間 (即 past specified time)，在這個時間，吃夜飯動作，已經完了。

I *shall have eaten* my breakfast at eight o'clock tomorrow morning. (未來完了)

明早八點我將已吃了早飯。

釋例—“At eight o'clock....”，是表明未來的指定時間 (即 future specified time)，在這個時間，吃早飯動作，定可完了。

USES OF THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

現在完了時候之用法

a. 構成公式：“Have”
“Has” + Past Participle

b. 用法要訣：凡表示一個動作，已經完了，而着重在其現在之結果或狀態者，用現在完了時候。

73. 現在完了時候之意義——現在完了時候，依其名稱而言，當然係用以表示一個動作在現在時候適已完了 (An action is just completed or finished now or at the time of speaking)。但按諸實在，此義猶未盡然也，因現在完了時候之主要意義，在於動作之完了，或在於因動作之結果所留

事物之現在狀態 (the present state of things resulting from the action), 不在於動作之本身, 故其發生於何時, 完畢於何事, 俱屬無關緊要, 儘可置之不問也 (The Present Perfect Tense lays the stress on the fact of its being completed or on the present state of things resulting from the action no matter when the action may have taken place or may have been completed).

- 例: a. Are you writing your composition?
你正在作文乎。
b. No, I have written it already.
否, 我已經作完了。

釋例一在(b)句中, 作文動作, 發生於何時, 完了於何時, 皆未明示出來, 其實亦不必追求。總之在出言之時, 作文動作, 確已完畢, 且現在確有因動作而成之文章也。

74. 現在完了時候意義之解釋 —— 茲為謀學者進一步明瞭現在完了時候之意義起見, 特為設例以說明之如下。

譬說今有人本立於某房間之東隅, 此人現擬由東隅走到西隅, 如彼已開步而走, 則動詞應為現在進行時候 “He is walking across the room,” 因動作正在進行中也。如在發言之時, 走之動作, 業已完了, 或此人已立於西隅, 則動詞應為現在完了時候 “He has finished walking,” or “He has reached the western end of the room.” 如明乎此, 則現在完了時候之用法, 當可知其梗概矣。立於西隅, 即因走之動作所遺留之現在狀態, 不走完了, 斷不能到達西隅也。

75. 現在完了時候與過去時候之比較 —— 現在完了時候之主要意義, 在第 73 節中, 已詳言之矣, 即在發言之時, 現在完了時候動詞所指之動作已經完了, 或指因動作之結果而留事物之現在狀態是也。據此可知現在完了時候動詞所指之動作, 其發生時間必早於發言之時則可斷言也。既發

生早於發言之時，則該動作之爲過去也，殆無疑焉。故多數初學英文文法者，每每將現在完了時候與過去時候互相混淆，無從辨別其異點，非無因也。總之現在完了時候與過去時候，實質上俱指過去之動作，而其內容所含之意義，則大有分別也。

欲明現在完了時候與過去時候意義上之區別，須先熟記和瞭解以下二語。

- (1) 過去時候係敘述過去之動作 (The Past Tense describes the past action), 其着重點在當時之動作; 而
- (2) 現在完了時候係表示事物之現在狀態 (The Present Perfect Tense denotes the present state of things), 或藉過去之動作以說明該動作之現在狀態 (The Past Action is mentioned to throw light on the present state of things), 其着重點在現在結果或狀態。

例: He *learned* English — when? — where? — how? (過去)
 他嘗學英文。 何時學 何處學 如何學法
 (注重在此三點)
 He *has learned* English. — He understands English now
 他嘗學英文。 no matter when, where or
 how he learned it. (現在完了)
 (注重在他現在懂英文)

過去時候，既着重在當時之動作，故其對於現在絕無絲毫關係者也 (The Past Tense gives no information about the present). 其唯一之目的，在使已經過去之動作，回憶於吾人心中而已 (The Object of the Past Tense is to recall the action itself before our mind). 故過去時候應用時，動詞之前後，大都隨有表時間 (time)，地點 (place)，或方法 (manner) 等疏狀詞，以形容動作在當時發生之情形也。至現在完了時候，亦係指過去動作者；但該動作必須對於現在，有若干關係，或留若干影響於現在 (The Present Perfect

Tense is used in referring to a past event in order to convey some information about the present). 換言之，關於動作本身之當時一切情形，如發生之時間，地點或方法等，皆可置之不問，只要因過去動作之結果，所留事物之現在狀態，現於吾人之眼前可也。故現在完了時候應用時，動詞之前後，大抵不得附加任何表時間之疏狀詞以形容動作，蓋其重心，本不在此也。

例：He *has studied* English. (現在完了)

他會習英文。

釋例一 他習英文，現在已經完了，因習英文之結果，故現在他懂英文。

He *studied* English at Shanghai when he was young. (過去)

他年幼時在上海習英文。

釋例一 他年幼時，的確在上海習過英文，而現在他却不會英文了。

註：偶有極少數動詞，雖為過去時候，而對現在，仍留有動作之結果，如“die”一字，即其例也。譬說“*He died last year.*”他於去年死了。死之一事，雖發生於去年，而在現在，他依舊是死斷不能復生也（*A man who died once must now be dead.*）。然此種究屬例外，在英文中，誠不多見也。

76. 現在完了係屬於現在的非過去的之證明——依據前節所述，吾人可以斷定現在完了時候所指之動作，實係屬於現在的，決非過去的；蓋其主要用途，是由過去的動作，推論該動作對現在所留之結果，故所言盡關現在之事物也。設動詞為他動的（*transitive verb*）更可以下列證明其非謬也。

現在完了

現在受動態

I have done it.

= *It is done.*

證：My work *is finished.*

= *I have my work finished.* 如掉轉其順序則為

I have finished my work.

= *My work is finished.*

77. 現在完了時候不得與過去的事物相共——現在完了時候所指之動作，既關現在之事物，故常與現在時候之事物相連帶，猶如過去時候常與過去相連帶也。

- 例: a. {Have you a bicycle? 你有一輛自行車乎. {(現 在)}}
 {Yes, I have bought one. 然,我已買了一輛矣. {(現在完了)}}
 = I have one. =我現在有一輛.
- {Where did you buy it? 你在何處購之. {(過 去)}}
 {I bought it at A's store. 我在甲商店購之也. {(過 去)}}
 b. {Do you know English? 你知英文乎. {(現 在)}}
 {Yes, I have learned a little. 然,我曾習少許. {(現在完了)}}
 = I know it. =我現在知英文.
- {When did you learn it? 你於何時習之. {(過 去)}}
 {I learned it when I was young. 我幼時習之. {(過 去)}}
 {(過 去)}

78. 現在完了時候應用時之注意——現在完了時候之主要意義，如前所云，不在乎動作之本身，而在於動作所遺留之現在的結果。故吾人應用現在完了時候時，其先決條件，便是要注意吾人所欲言之動作，其結果在現在是否存留，或是否影響於現在者；否則如動作對現在絕無絲毫關涉者，則現在完了時候，斷不可用以表示之也 (The Present Perfect Tense cannot be used unless the result of the action remains in some form or other at the present moment).

79. 現在完了時候所遺之二種結果——現在完了時候所指之動作，其遺留於現在之結果，分析之可得二種。

- (1) 近的結果——屬於事物或動作已經完了 (Immediate Result.——that remains in the things done).
- (2) 遠的或永久的結果——屬於行為者因動作所得之經驗，學識，或品格等 (Remote or Permanent Result.——that remains in the agent as experience, knowledge or character).

例: *I have written my essay.* (近的結果)
我已寫完了我的文章。

釋例一 寫了文章，即寫之動作，業已完畢，其結果屬於物的一方面，謂文章已竣事矣。

He has written a book. (遠的結果)

釋例一 他已著了一書，即他已成一個著作家，其結果屬於人的一方面，謂他已具著書之經驗也。

80. 近的結果之意義——現在完了時候之動詞，其所留於現在之結果，如係近的，大抵表示動作本身適纔完了狀態，其意與簡單式現在時候，大致相同。

例:	現在完了	故	現在時候
	<i>I have lost my knife.</i>		<i>I have no knife.</i>
	我已失了我的小刀。	，	我現無小刀。
	<i>My father has bought another horse.</i>	故	<i>He has another horse.</i>
	我父已另購一馬。	，	他現另有一馬。
	<i>The servant has gone for the doctor.</i>	故	<i>He is not here.</i>
	僕人已去請醫。	，	他現不在此。
	<i>The lamps have been lighted.</i>	故	<i>They are lighted.</i>
	燈已點着了。	，	燈現是點着了。
	<i>The door has been shut.</i>	故	<i>It is shut.</i>
	門已閉了。	，	門現是關了。

81. 遠的結果之意義——現在完了時候之動詞，其所留於現在之結果，如係遠的，大抵表示行為者因做了某種動作而獲得之經驗或知識。至該動作之完了時候，儘可置之不問，只要行為者所得之經驗或知識，仍存留於現在可也。其意與簡單式現在時候，大致亦相仿。

例:	現在完了	故	現在時候
	<i>I have seen a tiger.</i>	故	<i>I know what it is like.</i>
	我曾見過虎。	，	我現在知虎之狀。
	<i>He has studied German.</i>	故	<i>He understands German.</i>
	他曾習德文。	，	他現在懂德文。
	<i>He has had a good education.</i>	故	<i>He is well educated.</i>
	他已有了良好教育。	，	他現在是受過優良教育者。
	<i>I have not learned English.</i>	故	<i>I do not understand English.</i>
	我未嘗習過英文。	，	我現在不懂英文。

He *has traveled* much. 故 He is a great traveler.
 他已旅行不少地方。 ,, 他現在是大旅行家。

82. 二種結果辨別法 —— 欲辨別現在完了時候屬於何種結果，大概可由上下文之意義，或由現在完了時候動詞所在句語本身之意義推求之。但就事實論，往往有現在完了時候動詞之句語，其意非常含混，一時不易辨別其結果究屬於何種者，如“he has written a book”一語，即可作兩種解法：(甲) 他已寫完了一書 = 完了 = 近的結果，或(乙) 他曾著一書 = 經驗 = 遠的結果。此種句語，使讀者難以確定其意義。所以凡逢現在完了時候動詞，其結果可作兩可解法時（作遠的結果解固可，作近的結果解亦可），莫如在動詞前後，另加疏狀詞以區別之；如欲達近的結果意義者，則加表完了之疏狀詞 (adverbs denoting completion)；如欲達遠的結果意義者，則加表經驗之疏狀詞 (adverbs denoting experience)；如是，讀者既明瞭句中準確之意義當然不難辨別現在完了時候所留何種結果也。

例：He *has written* a book *already*. (完了) 近的結果
 他已經寫完了一本書。
 He *has written* a book *before*. (經驗) 遠的結果
 他從前曾著過一書。

(甲) 表完了疏狀詞 Adverbs Denoting Completion

1. Already—The bell has rung *already*. 鐘已鳴矣。
2. By this time—I think he has reached home *by this time*.
 我想此刻他已抵家矣。
3. Yet?—Has the bell rung *yet*? 鐘已鳴乎?
4. Not yet—School has *not* begun *yet*. 校中猶未上課也。
5. Just—I have *just* (only just) come. 我適來。
6. Now—I have *now* arrived in my native country. 我現已抵祖國矣。

註: a. “Yet” 一字, 大抵用於疑問句中, 其答句如係肯定的 (affirmative) 則用 “already,” 如係否定的 (negative) 則用 “not yet.”

例: Has the bell rung yet? Yes, it has rung already.
No, it has not rung yet.

b. “Already” 與 “yet” 二字可用以形容現在時候或現在完了時候, 但不能用以形容過去時候。

c. “Just” (only just) 與 “now” 二字, 常和現在完了時候同用, 而 “just now” 則和過去時候同用。

例: He has just arrived.
He arrived just now.

(Z) 表經驗疏狀詞 Adverbs Denoting Experience.

1. Ever?—Have you *ever* met him? 你曾遇見他否。
2. Never—I have *never* met him. 我從未遇見他。
3. Before—I have met him *before*. 從前我曾遇見他。
4. In one's time.—I have seen great men *in my time*. 在我時代我曾見過偉人。
5. Once, twice—I have met him *once or twice*. 我曾遇見他一二次。
6. Often, seldom—I have met him *very often*. 我常常遇見他。

註: a. “Ever” 用於疑問句中, “never” 用於否定句中, 與 “yet,” “not yet” 之用法相同。惟 “ever” 與 “never” 亦可用以形容過去時候。

例: Have you *ever* seen a giraff? (現在完了)
Did you *ever* see a giraff? (過去)
你曾見麒麟乎。
I have *never* seen a live giraff. (現在完了)
I *never* saw a live giraff. (過去)
我從未見過一只活麒麟。

b. “Before” 係指廣泛的從前, 可以形容現在完了時候。 “Ago” 係指狹義的從前, 且有表時間之字限制於前, 只能形容過去時候。

例: I have met him *before*. (現在完了)
從前我曾遇見他。
I met him three years *ago*. (過去)
三年前我遇見他。

- c. "In one's time" 肯定的，可以形容現在完了時候；而 "in one's life" 係否定的，形容過去時候。

例： I have seen many great men *in my time*. (現在完了)
but I never saw a greater man *in my life*. (過去)
有生以來見過偉人多矣，但生平未嘗見一更偉者。

83. 現在完了時候表示狀態之繼續 —— 現在完了時候，除前述二種主要結果外，尚可用以表示狀態之繼續 (to denote the continuance of state) —— 自過去某時候始繼續以至於現在。凡現在完了時候動詞能表示狀態之繼續者，大都限於一類動詞，其本身已具有繼續性之意義而不能有進行形者，如 "be," "know," "love," "hate," "belong" 等是也。此類動詞，如為現在完了式，其形雖屬完了，而其實係表示動作或狀態之繼續以至於現在，並不表示完了也。

例： I *have been* ill for a week.

我患病已一星期矣。

釋例 — 自一星期前起始患病，至今已一星期，但現在仍在病中也。

I *have known* him from a child.

我自幼即認識他。

釋例 — 自年幼時起始認識他，直至現在，仍舊認識他。

他 例：

1. To have had.....I *have had* the book since I was in middle school.
自我在中學我已有此書。
2. To have lived.....I *have lived* here these ten years.
近十年來我向居此處。
3. To have loved.....I *have loved* him all my life.
我一世愛他。
4. To have seen.....I *have not seen* him for a long while.
我久已不見他。
5. To have belonged.....This house *has always belonged* to our family.
此屋向歸我家。
6. To have hated.....I *have hated* him these four years.
四年來我終恨他。

84. 有繼續性意義動詞表示經驗——如前節所列“be,” “know,” “love,” “hate,” “belong”等具有繼續性意義動詞，除表示繼續外，尚有一種副意義 (secondary meaning)，即可用以表示行為者之經驗是也。

- | | | | |
|----|----|---|------|
| 例: | { | He <i>has lived</i> for five years in this house. | (繼續) |
| | a. | 他居於此屋已五年矣。 (現在仍居於此屋) | |
| | | He <i>has once lived</i> in Hongkong. | (經驗) |
| | | 他曾一度居於香港。 | |
| | b. | How long <i>have you been</i> here? | (繼續) |
| | | 你在此已有幾久。 (現在仍在此) | |
| | | <i>Have you ever been</i> here? | (經驗) |
| | | 你曾經到過此處否。 | |

如細察以上例句，可知在(a)類二句中，以“for five years”一語形容現在完了時候動詞，其意即為繼續；以“once”一字形容之，其意即為經驗。在(b)類二句中，有“how long”即表繼續；有“ever”即表經驗。故繼續與經驗，亦可藉句中所用之疏狀詞以辨別之也。茲特將表繼續與表經驗之疏狀詞，分別列表於下。

(甲) 表繼續疏狀詞或疏狀仿語	
Adverbs or Adverbial Phrases Denoting Continuance	
1. (For) long	—I have <i>long</i> wanted to know him. 我久欲認識他。
2. How long	— <i>How long</i> have you known him? 你認識他有幾久了。
3. For....	I have known him <i>for ten years</i> . 我認識他已十年了。
4. These....	I have known him <i>these ten years</i> . 近十年來我認識他。
5. Since....	I have known him <i>since his infancy</i> . 自他襁褓時我即認識他。
6. From a....	I have known him <i>from a child</i> . 自幼時我即認識他。

註: a. "For," "these," "since," "from a" 之後皆有虛線, 用時例須另加 object, 方能成 adverbial phrase 也。

b. "How long?" 譯作 "幾久" 或 "若干時," 常用於疑問句中, 問動作或狀態迄今曾歷若干時矣。此語只能用以形容現在完了時候動詞。

例: *How long have you lived in Shanghai?*
 你居於上海有幾久矣。
I have lived in Shanghai for three years
 我居於上海已三年矣。

(乙) 表經驗疏狀詞 Adverbs Denoting Experience.

1. Ever?—Have you *ever* been ill? 你曾患病否。
2. Never—I have *never* been ill in my life. 我生平未嘗患病。
3. Before—Have you been ill *before*? 從前你曾患病否。
4. In one's time—He has been successful *in my time*. 在我時代他已成功。
5. Once, twice—I have been there *once or twice*. 我曾往彼處一二次。
6. Often, seldom—But I have *seldom* been seriously ill. 但我平常患兇病。

85. 表繼續之現在完了時候替代過去時候 —— 表示繼續之現在完了時候動詞, 亦常用以替代過去時候, 其例如下。

例: 過去時候 When <i>did</i> you <i>come</i> here? 你何時來此。 I <i>came</i> here three years ago. 我於三年前來此。 He <i>was taken</i> ill at the end of last month. 他於上月底得病。	=	現在完了時候 How long <i>have</i> you been here? 你在此有幾久矣。 I <i>have been</i> here for three years. 我在此已三年矣。 He <i>has been</i> ill since the end of last month. 他自上月底即患病。
---	---	---

She *became* a widow seven months ago. = She *has been* a widow for seven months.

他於七個月前成爲寡婦。 他爲寡婦已七個月矣。

He *died* five years ago. = He *has been* dead these five years.

他死於五年前。 他死已五年於茲矣。

上列左右二方例句，其動詞之時候，雖各不同，而其所表之意義，大致無甚差異；不過經嚴格的比較，意義方面，似覺稍有區別也。蓋過去時候，着重在於動作，句中所有之疏狀詞，係指 point of time 表示動作實現之時也。現在完了時候，着重在於過去動作所留之現在狀態，句中所有之疏狀詞，係指 period of time，表示狀態繼續至今已歷若干時矣。如 “I came here three years ago” 一句，注重在 “came”；何時來，三年前來。又如 “I have been here for three years” 一句，注重在 “have been here”；在此已幾久矣，三年矣。

註：“Die” 一字，用於過去時候，固極普通，而用於現在完了時候，却不見；如欲將此字表完了，恆以形容詞 “dead” 代之。

例：He is *dead*. 他已死了。

如用 “He *has died*” 則誤矣。但於句中加疏狀詞 “just” 一字，如 “He has just died” 又復通用，因其意並不表示完了，乃謂適死也。

86. 成行動詞用於現在完了時候者——“Go,” “come,” “arrive,” “leave,” “become,” “grow,” “fall,” “retire,” 一類動詞，亦稱 成行動詞 (verbs of destiny)，其目的係用以答某人之近況如何 (What has become of him?)。此類動詞，如爲現在完了時候，其動作之直接結果，係示完了，非表經驗，意謂某人現已在何處或現已處何境況 (presence)，或某人現已不在何處 (absence)。

例:

- “To go”—He *has gone to America.* = He is in America. (presence)
 他已赴美國。 = 他在美國。
- “To come”—He *has come home.* = He is at home. (presence)
 他已返本國。 = 他在本國。
- “To arrive”—He *has just arrived* = He is here. (presence)
 here. 他適已到此。 = 他在此。
- “To leave”—He *has left* = He is no longer
 school. in school. (absence)
 他已離校。 = 他不在校。
- “To become”—He *has become rich.* = He is rich. (presence)
 他已成為富有矣。 = 他是富了。
- “To grow”—He *has grown old.* = He is old. (presence)
 他已長老矣。 = 他是老了。
- “To fall”—He *has fallen asleep.* = He is asleep. (presence)
 他已入睡矣。 = 他熟睡了。
- “To retire”—He *has retired from* = He is no longer
 business. in business. (absence)
 他已向商事告退矣。 = 他已不經商了。

87. 處分動詞用於現在完了時候者——“Buy,” “sell,” “lose,” “spend,” “bring,” “give,” “lend,” “keep,” 一類動詞，亦稱處分動詞 (verb of disposal)，其目的係用以答對於某事某物作何處置 (What have you done with it?). 此類動詞，如為現在完了時候，其動作之直接結果，係示完了，非表經驗，意謂某物已為某人所有 (possession)，或已非某人所有 (non-possession)。

例:

- “To sell”—I *have sold* my horse. = I have none. (non-pos-
 我已賣了我的馬。 = 我現無馬。 session)
- “To buy”—I *have bought* a bicycle. = I have one. (possession)
 我已購了一輛自行車。 = 我現有一輛。
- “To give”—I *have given* him my = I have no watch. (non-pos-
 watch. 我已給他我的表。 = 我現無表。 session)
- “To find”—I *have found* my watch. = I have it. (possession)
 我已尋着我的表。 = 我現有表。

- “To lose”—I *have lost* my watch. = I do not have it. (non-pos-
我已失了我的表。 = 我現未有表。 session)
- “To spend”—I *have spent* all my = I have no money. (non-pos-
money. 我已用完我所有之錢。 = 我現無錢。 session)
- “To lend”—I *have lent* it to you. You have it. (pos-
我已借此給你。 = 你有此。 session)
- “To keep”—I *have kept* one half = I have half of (possession)
of it. 我已留下一半。 it. 我有一半。

88. 現在完了時候之正用法——綜括以前種種之說明，可得現在完了時候之正用法六則，學者於此，務宜加以特別注意也。

- (1) 凡一個已經完了之動作，其結果有關現在時候者，應以現在完了時候表示之 (Use the Present Perfect Tense to denote a completed action that conveys some information concerning the present).
- (2) 現在完了時候，絕對不能與任何表示確定的過去時候之字共用 (The Present Perfect Tense must not be used with any word denoting definite past time).

例：	誤	正
	The new teacher <i>has arrived</i> <i>a few days ago.</i>	The new teacher arrived a few days ago. 新教師於數日前到了。
	I <i>have seen</i> him <i>yesterday.</i>	I saw him yesterday. 昨日我見他。

註：但表整個時候之確狀詞 (adverbs of duration) 又屬例外，儘可與現在完了時候同用。

- 例： I *have studied* English *for five years.*
我習英文已五年矣。
I *have long wanted* to study French.
我久已欲習法文

- (3) 現在完了時候可與表示不確定時候之疏狀詞同用
(The Present Perfect Tense may be used with
adverbs of indefinite time).

例: I *have always lived* in Japan.

我常居於日本。

I *have often been* in Peiping.

我常往北平。

I *have not met* Mr. Wang *lately*.

近來我未晤王君。

I *have met* him *hundreds of times*.

我已遇見他幾百次矣。

表示不確定時候之疏狀詞，其常用者約舉於下：

already	now	just	seldom	never
sometimes	always	ever	often	lately
twice	since	once	yet	etc., etc.

- (4) 現在完了時候，絕對不能用於以“when”起始之疑問句中
(The Present Perfect Tense must not be
used in questions beginning with “when”).

例: 誤

When *has* he *arrived*?

When *have* you *bought* this?

正

When did he arrive?

When did you buy this?

你何時購此。

但疑問句如係他種發問字起始者，現在完了時候，仍可隨意義之需要而用之也。

例: { Where did you go?
你往何處去了。
{ Where *has* he *gone*?
他已往何處去了。

- { Why *have* you *sold* your house?
 你為何已賣你的房屋呢。
 } Why did you not sell it to me?
 為何你不將房屋賣給我呢。
 { How did he do it?
 他如何為此呢。
 } How *has* he *done* it?
 他已如何為此呢。
 { Who took you to the museum?
 誰引你至博物院。
 } Who *has* taken my book?
 誰已取我的書。
 { What *has* become of Mr. A?
 甲君現在境況如何。
 } What became of the mouse in the story?
 故事中小鼠之結果如何。
 { Which did he choose?
 他選那一個。
 } Which *have* you *chosen*?
 你已選了那一個。

- (5) 現在完了時候，可用以表示一個動作，完成在一個整個時間包含現在時候在內者(The Present Perfect Tense is used to denote an action done in a period of time including the present).

例: I *have walked* ten miles today.

今日我已走了十哩。

Much snow *has fallen* this year.

今年雪下甚多。

表示整個時間之疏狀詞，常用者如下：

today	this week	this month	this year
tonight	this morning	etc., etc.	

註：觀於以上二個例句，其動作似非完全過去，亦非完全現在，現在完了時候，如此用者，恐正爲此故耳。但此類句語亦有用過去時候表示之者，惟須注意發言之時也。

例：He has been here this morning. (現在完了) (午前言之)
今早他在此處。

He was here this morning. (過去) (午後言之)
今早他在此處。

- (6) 凡以 “if,” “when,” “before,” “after,” “as soon as,” 等契合詞所接引之疏狀子句，其中動詞，如爲未來完了時候，可用現在完了時候替代之。(參閱 46, 48 節.)

例：Please return me the book when you *have done* with it
(=when you will have done with it.)

當你看完了此書時請即還我。

I will attend to the business as soon as I *have finished* the other. (= I shall have finished the other.)

一俟我做完了那事我當即爲此事。

89. “Have gone” 與 “Be gone”——少數自動詞 (intransitive verbs) 之表示行動 (verbs of motion) 或變形 (verbs of change of some sort or other) 者，如 “go,” “come,” “arrive,” “return,” “pass,” “depart,” “ascend,” “rise,” “fall,” “sink,” “become,” “grow,” “turn,” “vanish” 等，其現在完了時候式除 “have” + past participle 外，尚有 “be” + past participle 一式，如

I have come.	或	I am come.
The sun has set.	,,	The sun is set.
The child has grown up.	,,	The child is grown up.
My ships have arrived.	,.	My ships are arrived.

“Be” + past participle 一式，如 “am come,” “is set,” “is grown,” “are arrived” 等，學者切勿誤為該動詞等之受動態，因自動詞決不能有受動態也。吾人對此式，可作二種解法：第一 “be” + past participle 可視為正當現在完了時候式，與 “have” + past participle 一式，無大差異。第二，可將 “be” + past participle 分析之，不作為一個云謂動詞 (predicate verb)，以 “be” 為正式動詞而將 past participle 作形容詞用，為 “be” 之句主補足語 (subjective complement to “be”)。但考據多數文法學者之意見，第二種解法，似較近理，蓋 “have” + past participle 與 “be” + past participle 二式，表面上固無大差別，而其內容意義上，却頗有不同之處，緣前者着重於動作之完了，而後者却着重於因動作而留存之現在狀態也 (即 agent 之現在狀況是也)。

- 例： I have come. (來之動作現已完了) (着重在動作)
 我已來了。
 I am come. (我現在在此) (着重在我之現在狀況)
 我已來。

90. “Have been” 之意義——“Have been” (即 “to be” 之現在完了式)，有二種意義：

- (1) 用以表狀態之繼續 (Continuance).
- (2) 用以表經驗 (Experience).

- 例： How long *have you been* ill?)
 你病幾久矣。)
 I *have been* ill for a week.)
 我已病一星期矣。)
 How often *have you been* ill?)
 你常病乎。)
 I *have been* ill once before.)
 從前我曾患病一次。)
- (繼續)
- (經驗)

91. “Have gone” 與 “Have come” 之用法——“Go” 與 “come” 二個動詞，如爲現在完了時候，只能表示動作完了之意，以示其句主 (subject) 所指之人之所在 (to denote the whereabouts of the agent). 如欲將此二字，用以表示經驗之意，如“曾往”或“曾來，”則須用“have been”以代之。

例：	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He has gone there.} \\ \text{他已往彼處.} \end{array} \right.$	(完了)	=	He is there.	他之所在.
	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He has been there.} \\ \text{他曾往彼處.} \end{array} \right.$	(經驗)			
	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He has come here.} \\ \text{他已來此.} \end{array} \right.$	(完了)	=	He is here.	他之所在.
	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He has been here.} \\ \text{他曾來此.} \end{array} \right.$	(經驗)			

句主之經驗

句主之所在

Have you ever been abroad?

你曾往外國否。

He has gone abroad.

他已往外國。

Has the doctor been here today?

今日醫生曾來此否。

Has the doctor come?

醫生已來乎。

92. “Have gone” 與 “Have come” 應用時之注意——“Have gone” 與 “have come” 應用時，吾人須注意下列三事。

- (1) “Have gone” 祇能用於第三人稱，不得用於第一或第二人稱，即 I, we, you, 等代名詞，絕對不能爲 “have gone” 之句主是也。蓋第一人稱爲發言者 (speaker)，第二人稱爲對語者 (person spoken to)，故雙方言語時，當然彼此相見，如再言已往何處，豈非矛盾耶。故第一第二人稱需用 “have gone” 時，惟有用 “have been” 以代之也。

例：	誤用	正用
	Have you gone to America?	Have you been in America?
	(=Are you not here now?)	
	Yes, I have gone there.	Yes, I have been there.
	(=I am not here now.)	

註：在間接引用語中，(indirect narration) 第一人稱或第二人稱之代名詞，亦偶有爲“have gone”之句主者。

例：If any body asks where you have gone, what shall I say?
如有人來詢問你，我當告之你往何處去了呢。

Say that I have gone to my office.

請告我已赴公事房矣。

如上例改爲直接引用語 (direct narration), “you have gone,” 與 “I have gone” 二句仍應改爲 “he has gone.”

例：Some body asks, “Where has he gone?”

有人問他已往何處矣。

I reply, “He has gone to his office.”

我答他已赴公事房矣。

釋例一人向我問 “you” 之所在，對 “you” 當稱爲 “he.” 我答 “you” 之所在，對詢問人，當然亦稱 “you” 爲 “he” 也。

(2) “Have come” 不論句主之人稱，皆可用之。

例：Do you come here to see my brother?

你來見我兄弟乎。

No, I come here to see you.

否，我來見你。

Has your brother come? (=Is he here?)

你的兄弟已來乎。

No, he has not come. (=He is not here.)

否，他尚未來。

(3) “Have gone” 與 “Have come,” 不得和表示經驗之疏狀詞同用。(參閱 82 節乙表.)

例： 誤用 正用

Have you come here before? *Have you been* here before?

(=Are you here now before?)

Yes, I *have come* here very often. I *have been* here very often.

(=I am here at this moment very often.)

Has he ever come here? *Has he ever been* here?

(=Is he ever here now?)

He *has come* here once or twice. He *has been* here once or twice.

(=He is here now once or twice.)

93. “Have been ⁱⁿ_{at}” 與 “Have been to” 之意義 ——
 “Have been ⁱⁿ_{at}” 與 “have been to” 之意義，異常含混，初學者每苦不易辨別，茲將其用法分述於下。

(1) “Have been ⁱⁿ_{at}” = 曾往某處或曾到某處。

此式重在經驗，意謂從前曾到過某處或曾經在某處。

例: *Have you ever been in America?*

你曾到過美國否。

No, I *have never* been there.

否，我從未到過美國。

Yes, I *have been* there once.

我曾經到過一次。

(2) “Have been to....” = (1) 曾往某處而回 = *Have gone and come back.*

(2) 曾來某處而已去 = *Have come and gone back.*

此式重在動作之完了，意謂 (1) 曾到某處去過而現在已經回來不在某處矣，或 (2) 曾到某處來過而現在已經回去不在某處矣。

例: *Have you been to Nanking?* (=Have you gone to and returned from Nanking?)

你曾往南京而回乎。

I *have been to* Nanking. (=I have gone to and returned from Nanking.)

我曾往南京而回。

He *has been to* my home. (=He has come to my home and has now gone back.)

他曾來我家而現已去矣。

註一: “In,” “at,” 或 “to” 之後，大抵須用表地方之名詞 (noun denoting place).

註二: 在“Have been ⁱⁿ_{at}” 中，“in” 與 “at” 無甚差異 如所言地方廣大者則用 “in,” 如國家，都會等；如所言地方狹小者則用 “at,” 如縣城，村鎮等。

94. “Have been” + Infinitive 之意義——“Have been” + infinitive 與前節之“have been to”大致相同，不過意義上稍多一些耳。

“Have been” + infinitive.... = 曾因某事往某處而回 (某處表出或隱藏均可)。

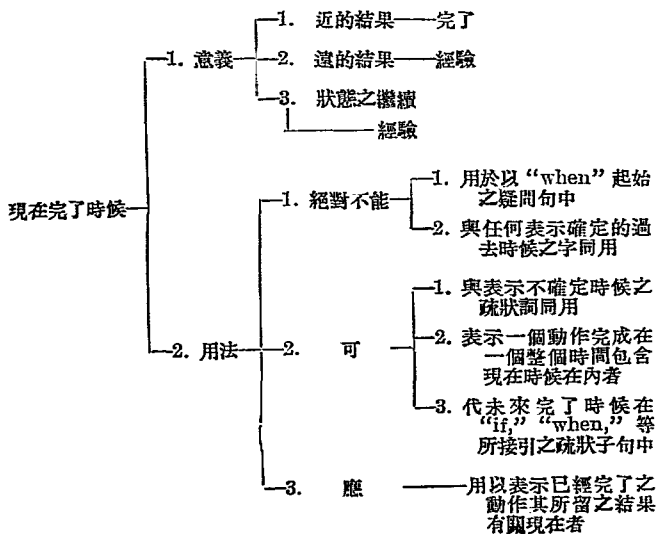
例: I have been to see the plum blossoms. (=I have just returned from seeing the plum blossoms.)

我曾去看梅花而回。(看梅花事也，地點未表出)

I have been to the station to see a friend off. (=I have gone to and returned from the station to see a friend off.)

我曾往車站送友人行而回。(送友行事也，地點表出)

現在完了時候用法簡表



USES OF THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

過去完了時候之用法

- a. 構成公式: “Had” + Past Participle
 b. 用法要訣: 凡表示一個動作, 在一個確定的過去時候之先已經完了者, 用過去完了時候。

95. 過去完了時候與現在完了時候之比較 —— 現在完了時候, 係表示動作在現在時候已經完了 (action completed now or at this moment), 而過去完了時候, 係表示動作在過去某時候已經完了 (action completed then or at that time). 故過去完了時候對於過去之關係, 正如現在完了時候對於現在之關係也。

例:	現在完了	過去完了
	He <i>has left</i> school. = He <i>is not in school now</i> . 他已離校。= 他現在不在校。	He <i>had left</i> school. = He <i>was not in school then</i> . 他早離校。= 當時他不在校。
	He <i>has been married</i> for a year. = It <i>is a year since he got married</i> . 至今他結婚已一年了。	He <i>had been married</i> for a year. = It <i>was a year since he had got married</i> . 當那時他結婚已一年了。
	He <i>has seen</i> much of life. = He <i>knows</i> the world. 他對人情閱歷甚深。= 他現在深知世故。	He <i>had seen</i> much of life. = He <i>knew</i> the world. 他對人情早已閱歷甚深。= 當時他已知世故。

試比較上列二排例句, 可得一結論如下: 現在完了時候, 其表示動作, 以現在時候 (“now,” “at this moment,” or “at the time of speaking”) 為主, 即動作在現在是否已經完了是也。過去完了時候, 其表示動作, 以一個指定的過去時候為主 (“then,” “at that time,” or “at some definite past time”), 即動作在當時是否已經完了是也。

96. 過去完了時候之普通用途 —— 過去完了時候之用途，與現在完了時候之用途相同，即 (1) 表過去完了，(2) 表過去經驗，(3) 表過去繼續是也。

(1) 完了 (Completion)

謂動作在過去的某時候 (指明或不指明均可) 早已完了，大概常與 “already,” “yet,” “not yet,” “just,” “by that time” 等疏狀詞同用。(參閱 82 節甲表。)

- 例：1. School *had begun* already.
早已上課矣。
2. By that time I *had finished* my task.
當那時我早已完了我的工作。
3. I asked if the bell *had rung* yet.
我問鐘已鳴否。
4. He said that the bell *had not rung* yet.
他云鐘尚未鳴也。
5. I got to the station to find that the train *had only just been off*.
我到車站見火車恰已開駛。

釋例 — 以上五句中，每句動詞所指之動作，均係在一個指定的過去時候之先，已經完了；如在第二句，工作在 “by that time” 已經完了，又如在第五句，火車在我到站時已經開駛了。但 “by that time” 與 “got to the station” 俱係過去時候，故工作完了與火車開駛，均須以過去完了時候表示之也。

(2) 經驗 (Experience)

謂因過去的動作之結果而獲得當時之經驗，大概常與 “ever,” “never,” “before,” “often,” “once,” “seldom” 等疏狀詞同用。(參閱 82 節乙表。)

- 例：I wondered if I *had ever met* him.
我不知曾否遇見他。
- I concluded I *had never met* him.
我斷言我從未遇見他。
- I knew him for I *had met* him before.
我認識他因從前我曾遇見他。

I *had met* him several times.
我從前曾遇見他幾次矣。
But I *had seldom spoken* to him.
但我不常向他說話。

(3) 繼續 (Continuance)

謂狀態之繼續以至於當時，大概常與“long,” “how long?,” “from,” “since,” “up to...,” 等字同用。
(參閱 84 節甲表。)

例: I *had long wanted* to know him.
我久已欲認識他。
How long *had you known* him?
你認識他已幾久矣。
I *had known* him for seven years.
我認識他已七年矣。
I *had known* him since we were boys together
我們年幼時我已認識他。
Up to that time all *had gone* well.
直至那時萬事順利。

97. 過去完了時候之主要用途——過去完了時候，除前節所舉三種普通用途以外，尚有四種特殊意義，即 (1) 二重過去 (double past), (2) 先前過去 (priority), (3) 對主要動作表原因或說明的關係 (to stand in a causal or explanatory relation to the main action), (4) 表事物在續後動作時之狀況 (to denote the state of things at the time of the subsequent action) 是也。

98. 二重過去——簡單式過去時候，係對於現在時候表示過去動作 (The Past Indefinite Tense denotes past to the present). 今如欲對於過去時候，表示過去動作，則須用過去完了時候 (The Past Perfect Tense denotes past to the past), 因過去完了時候，素有二重過去時候之稱也 (double past tense). 於此可知二重過去之意義，並不在表示動作對過去某時候已經完了，而在表示動作對過去為過去也。

例：對過去完了 (Perfect to Past)

二重過去 (Past to Past)

1. (a) He said that his father
had returned.= He said, "My father has
returned."

他云他父已歸矣。

= 他云, "吾父已歸矣。"

2. (a) He said that he *had*
met her before.= He said, "I have met her
before."

他云他從前曾經遇見他。

= 他云, "我從前曾經遇見他。"

1. (b) He said that his father
had returned the day
before.= He said, "My father
returned yesterday."

他云他父日前歸來。

= 他云, "吾父昨日歸來。"

2. (b) He said that he *had met*
her three years before.= He said, "I met her three
years ago."

他云他於三年之前遇見他。

= 他云, "三年前我遇見他。"

釋例一 1. (a) 爲間接引用語, 其引用語中之過去完了時候動詞 "had returned" 係表示動作在 "He said" 之時已經完了, 故改爲直接引用語時, "had returned" 易以 "has returned" 矣。但在 1. (b) 句中, "had returned" 並非表示動作在 "He said" 之時爲完了, 乃表示 "had returned" 對 "He said" 爲過去動作也, 故有 "the day before" 一語以示歸來之時; 如改爲直接引用語, "had returned" 易以 "returned" 矣。"had returned" 對 "He said" 爲過去, 而 "said" 對現在本爲過去, 故 1. (b) 中之 "had returned," 實爲二重過去也 (past to past)。

註: 過去完了時候表示二重過去者, 大抵用於附屬子句中爲多 (間接引用語名詞子句中爲尤多), 因非如此用法, 不能對主要動詞 (main verb) 表 "過去之過去" 之關係也。

99. 二重過去之說明——關於二重過去之意義, 茲特說明如次, 學者如能稍加注意, 不難徹底明瞭也。

昨日 (yesterday), 前日 (the day before) 對於現在時候言, 俱屬過去, 故昨日與前日之事, 如分別論之, 各用過去時候動詞表示之, 固甚合理也。昨日與前日對現在, 固爲過去, 而前日對昨日, 當然亦爲過去; 故就現在, 以言昨日之事, 昨日之事爲過去; 如就現在, 以言昨日之昨日之事, 一即前日之事一昨日之昨日之事, 對昨日爲過去, 而對現在

豈非過去之過去耶。所以在現在欲言昨日之事，其動詞當然爲過去時候；但在現在對昨日而言前日之事，其動詞則須爲過去完了時候也。

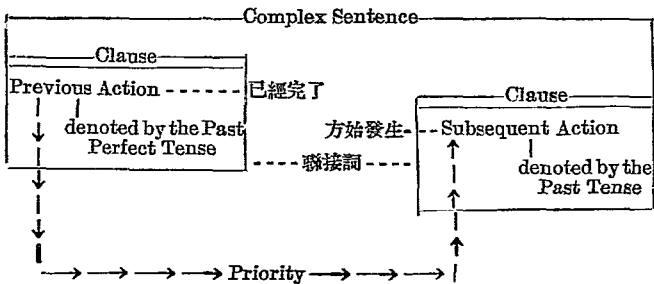
100. 先前過去——先前過去 (Priority) 者，謂過去完了時候所指之動作，早於另外一個過去動作也 (The Past Perfect Tense denotes the priority of one past action to another). 換言之，過去完了時候所指之動作，已經完了，而另外一個過去動作，方始發生也 (The Action denoted by the Past Perfect Tense had been completed before another took place). 此層意義，實爲過去完了時候之基本意義，亦即過去完了時候之主要用途也。

101. 先前過去應用之條件——依據前節之意義，表示先前過去之過去完了時候，應用時有必要條件三，茲特列舉於下：

- (1) 應用複雜句 (Complex Sentence)——表示先前過去之過去完了時候所在之句語，大抵必爲複雜句，即一個主要子句 (principal clause) + 一個或幾個附屬子句 (subordinate clause) 而成之句語 (a complex sentence = one principal clause + one or more subordinate clauses). 蓋此種句語，至少含有二個地位不等之動作，故能將動作先後之關係，明白表出也。
- (2) 應先別動作之先後——在未作語句之前，須辨別二個動作孰者爲先，孰者爲後。表先的動作 (previous action) 之動詞，應爲過去完了時候；表後的動作 (subsequent action) 之動詞，應爲過去時候。
- (3) 應充分表出 “Priority”——先的動作，對後的動作，須充分表出 “priority.” 過去完了時候所表示

之動作，已經完了，而過去時候所表示之動作，方始發生也 (The Previous Action had been finished before the Subsequent Action was commenced).

先 前 過 去 用 法 圖



例: (a) Previous Action (Conj.) Subsequent Action

I had read these books when you *came*.

當你來時我已讀完了這些書。(讀了動作完了你方始來)

He *had been* ill two days when the doctor *was sent* for.

當延醫時他已病了二天。(已經病了二天方始延醫)

(b) Subsequent Action (Conj.) Previous Action

I *read* the book which I *had borrowed*.

我讀我已借來之書。(書已借來之後方始閱讀)

He *mailed* the letter which he *had written*.

他寄他已寫了之信。(信寫完了之後方始寄遞)

註: Subsequent action 置於 previous action 之後，固屬自然之順序；但置於 previous action 之前，亦無不可。蓋動作之先後，在 complex sentence 中，不必依子句之次序而定，其動詞之時候以及各子句之意義，亦能表出也。

102. 表示“Priority”之其他方法——“Priority”除用過去完了時候可以表示外，尚有下列二法可以表示之。

a. 以動作之順序表示之 (by the order of actions).

b. 以“after,” “before,” “till”等緊合詞表示之 (by the use of conjunctions such as “after,” “before,” “till,” etc.)

a. 動作順序表示法——二個或二個以上均以簡單式過去時候所表示之過去動作，意義上如有先後者，可依其發生之順序，——列舉之。先發生者列於前，後發生者列於後，其動作前後關係之連貫，用“and, - “and then”或其他相類之緊合詞聯結之。倘該兩個過去動作，不依其發生之順序而列舉，如 subsequent action 必須在 previous action 之前者，則仍宜用過去完了時候以表先的動作，過去時候以表後的動作也。

註：以動作之順序表示“priority,” 所用之句多爲合沓句，即二個或二個以上地位同等獨立子句組合而成之句語 (a compound sentence = one independent clause + one or more independent clauses).

例：

1.

{ The maid *broke* a plate and *concealed* it. (compound)
 女僕碎一盆而隱匿之。
 (“broke a plate” 先的動作，“concealed it” 後的動作，“conceal” 必在 “broke” 完了之後)
 The maid *concealed* the plate which she *had broken*. (complex)

2.

{ Father *built* a house and we *moved* into it. (compound)
 父建一屋我們遷入之。
 (“built a house” 先的動作，“moved into it” 後的動作，“moved into it” 必在 “built” 完了之後)
 We *moved* into the house which father *had built*. (complex)

3

{ I *bought* a novel and *read* it. (compound)
 我購一本小说而讀之。
 (“bought a novel” 先的動作，“read it” 後的動作，“read it” 必在 “bought” 完了之後)
 I *read* the novel which I *had bought*. (complex)

b. 用“after,”“before,”“till”表示法——以“after,”“before,”“till”等字表示“priority,”其動作之先後，極為明顯，因此三個字自能充分表現“priority”也。

例： { He *arrived after* I *left*.
他到在我走了之後。（“arrived”後的動作，“left”先的動作）
I *left before* he *arrived*.
他未到之前我走了。
I *had already left when* he *arrived*.
當他到時我已走了。

{ I *waited a long while till* he *came*.
我候了許久直至他來。（“waited”先的動作，“came”後的動作）
I *had waited a long while when* he *came*.
當他來時我已候了多時矣。

{ I *arrived at the station after* the train *left*.
火車開行之後我方抵站。（“arrived”後的動作，“left”先的動作）
When I *arrived at the station*, I found that the train *had left* already.
當我抵站時，火車已開行矣。

註：二個過去動作，其先後之關係，如不能以動作之順序或不能用“after,”“before,”等字來表現，則 previous action 當然須以過去完了時候表示之也。

例： I was told that he *had left* the day before.
據云他於日前已走了。（“had left”先的動作，“was told”後的動作）

103. 對主要動作表原因或說明的關係——過去完了時候，除其主要用途表示“priority”外，對於句中主要動作 (main action denoted by the past tense) 常表示一種原因或說明的關係。

例： I did not know him because I *had never met* him before.
我並不認識他，因從前我尚未遇見他。
（“had never met him before”對“did not know”說明原因）
The boy would not drink, because he *had been told* by his mother never to taste strong drink.
此童不飲酒，因其母曾囑其不嗜強性之飲品也。
（“because he had been told...”對“would not drink”說明原因）

I was very hungry. I *had eaten* nothing all day

我甚餓因終日我未嘗食過東西也。

（“had eaten nothing”對“was hungry”說明原因）

The boy was crying. He *had lost* his toy.

此童正大哭因其失了他的玩物。

（“had lost his toy”對“was crying”說明原因）

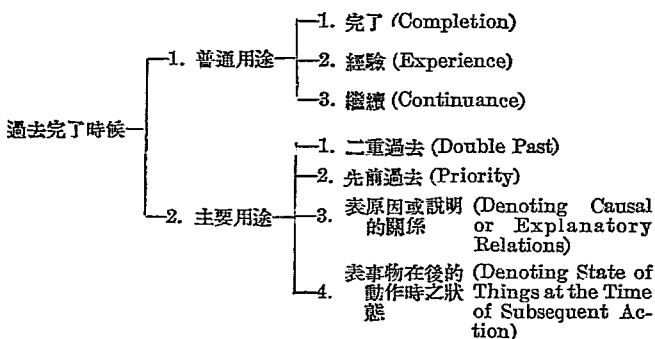
104. 表事物在後的動作時之狀態——除“priority”外，過去完了時候亦可用以表事物在後的動作發生時之狀態。如此用法，過去完了時候大致與過去時候相同。

- 例：
- | | |
|---|---|
| { | I ate something before dinner. (過去時候) |
| | 飯前我吃過東西。(只示吃東西在飯之前) |
| { | I <i>had eaten</i> something before dinner. (過去完了時候) |
| | 飯前我已吃了東西。(故在飯時我不想吃飯也) |
| { | Your letter came after I left. (過去時候) |
| | 我走後你信方來。(只示我走在你信來之前) |
| { | Your letter came after I <i>had left</i> . (過去完了時候) |
| | 我走了之後，你信方來。(故信來時無人接受也) |
| { | He learned English before he went to America. (過去時候) |
| | 他赴美之前他習英文。(只示習英文在美之前) |
| { | He <i>had learned</i> English before he went to America. (過去完了時候) |
| | 他赴美之前他曾習英文。(故赴美時他知英文) |

105. 過去完了時候用法之結論——綜觀前述各種用法，過去完了時候應用時，無不與其他一個過去時候相依附。且其所表示之動作，必先於該過去時候所表示之動作也。Nesfield 氏在其所著“English Grammar, Book IV.”中曾云，“The Past Perfect Tense ought never to be used at all except to show the priority of one past event to another.”此言洵為過去完了時候用法之南針也。但過去完了時候，亦偶有單獨冠於一篇記事文之首，並未與其他任何過去時候相連帶者。然究其實，無形中，仍與其他過去事物有關，蓋篇首之過去完了時候，乃引出在後之一切重要事

實也。如有某故事，其起首一句為 “The day had been very mild”——所有該故事中之一切重要事實，必逐一發現於 “The day....之後，可無疑也。

過去完了時候用法簡表



USES OF THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

未來完了時候之用法

- a. 構成公式： “Shall” }
“Will” } have” + Past Participle
- b. 用法要訣：凡表示一個動作，預計在一個確定的未來時候之前，可以完了者，用未來完了時候。

註：未來完了時候之構造，只有一個公式，第一人稱爲 “shall have” + past participle；第二第三人稱爲 “will have” + past participle；不如簡單式未來時候，另有意志未來之公式也。吾人可用 “I will go,” 但不能用 “I will have gone;” 可用 “you shall go,” 但不能用 “you shall have gone.” 至其餘可類推之也。

106. 未來完了時候之用途 —— 未來完了時候之用途，與現在完了時候及過去完了時候之用途，大致相同；即 (1) 表未來完了，(2) 表未來經驗，(3) 表未來繼續是也。

(1) 完了 (Completion)

謂動作在未來某時候，預計可以完了。

例：I *shall have finished* my task by the time school begins.

在上課時我將可以完了我的工作。

The new building *will have been completed* by the time you return.

你回來之時新屋可以完成了。

By next Monday the ship *will have reached* Shanghai.

下星期一此船必可到達上海。

(2) 經驗 (Experience)

謂因動作之結果，可獲得將來之經驗。

例：You *will have understood* many new things when you read through the book.

你讀完了此書時你定能明白許多新異事物。

I *shall have seen* the world by that time.

到那時我當可明白世情矣。

(3) 繼續 (Continuance)

謂狀態之繼續以至於未來。

例：The war *will have lasted* for four years by August next year.

至明年八月戰爭將四年矣。

I *shall have lived* in Tientsin for five years by the end of this year.

至今年年底我居於天津將五年矣。

I *shall have been* in this school for three years by April next.

至明年四月我在此校將三年矣。

註：未來完了時候，不論表示完了，經驗，或繼續，其前後大概須加表確定的未來時候之疏狀短句或疏狀子句 (adverbial phrase or clause denoting definite future time)，以示動作將可完了之時也。

107. 現在完了時候替代未來完了時候——凡以“if,” “when,” “before,” “after,” “till,” “as soon as,” 等聚合詞所接引之疏狀子句，其中動詞，如爲未來完了時候，可代以現在完了時候，在意義上，並無若何差異也。（參閱 88 節第 6 項。）

例：I shall go out with you when I *have written* my letters (= when I shall have written...).

我寫了信之後我與你一同出去。

I intend to go into business when I *have completed* my middle school course (= when I shall have completed...).

我待中學畢業時我擬就商。

I will let you know as soon as I *have decided* (= as soon as I shall have decided).

我一決定當通知你。

108. 現在時候替代未來完了時候——現在時候，亦常用以替代未來完了時候，其用法與前節之現在完了時候替代未來完了時候相同。（參閱 48 節。）

例：Wait till I *eat* my supper (= till I shall have eaten my supper).

請稍待至我吃了晚飯之後。

I will do it as soon as I *finish* my task (= as soon as I shall have finished my task).

一俟我完了工作我即爲此。

I will attend to that matter after I *complete* this (= after I shall have completed this).

我完成了此事之後當注意那事。

未來完了時候用法簡表

- | | | |
|--------|---|---------------------|
| 未來完了時候 | — | 1. 完了 (Completion) |
| | | 2. 經驗 (Experience) |
| | | 3. 繼續 (Continuance) |

第 十 一 章

USES OF THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES

進行式各時候之用法

109. 進行式各時候之意義——“Progressive”一字，其意即向前進 (in progress 或 going on). 進行時候者 (progressive tense), 謂一個動作，在某一個指定時間 (或現在，或過去，或未來) 方在進行中而尚未完了也 (The Progressive Tense denotes an action continuing or going on at a certain specified present, past or future time).

110. 進行式各時候用法之通則——凡一個方在繼續進行中而尚未完了之動作，即用進行時候之動詞，以表該動作可也 (Use the Progressive Tense to express an action that is continuing or going on). 但須注意者，即動作在何時，方在進行也。如在現在方在進行，則用現在進行時候之動詞是也。

- 例: *I am eating* my supper now. (現在進行時候)
 現在我方吃夜飯. (現在吃飯動作正在進行, 尙未吃完也)
- When you came to my home last evening, I was eating* my supper. (過去進行時候)
 昨晚你到我家來時我方吃夜飯. (昨晚你來時, 吃飯動作正在進行, 尙未吃完也)
- I shall be eating* my supper, at seven o'clock tomorrow evening. (未來進行時候)
 明晚七時我將正在吃夜飯. (明晚七時, 吃飯動作, 將正在進行, 尙未吃完也)

111. 無進行時候之動詞 (Verbs Having no Progressive Tenses)——進行時候之動詞，既為表示動作之進行，故一個動詞，其本身已具有繼續或進行之意義者，即可以該動詞之簡單式作進行時候用可也，不必再作成進行式。否則必

致兩重繼續意義，併於一個動詞之中，於理殊有不合也。但此種動詞，如用於特殊意義時，則又屬例外，仍可以進行式表示進行或繼續之意也。

例:	正	誤
	He <i>has</i> a good appetite. 他有極好之胃口。	He <i>is having</i> a good appetite.

此處“has”作“有”字解，其本身已具繼續意義，故不能以“is having”表示無形中進行動作或狀態。但“He is having his supper,”一句中，“is having”並不錯誤，因其作“吃”字解也。

112. 無進行時候動詞表——具有進行或繼續意義之動詞，其數不多，茲就常用者，分爲二類如下：

第一類——狀態繼續動詞 (Verbs of Continuous States): 表示存在，所有等意義之動詞屬之。

- “To be” —— He *is* a teacher of English.
他爲英文教師。
- “To have” —— I *have* two hands.
我有二手。
- “To live” —— He *lives* in Shanghai.
他居於上海。
- “To exist” —— The school *exists* no longer
此校不復存在矣。
- “To lie” —— The house *lies* there.
屋在那處。
- “To stand” —— The temple *stands* on the hill.
廟在山上。
- “To own” —— He *owns* many houses.
他有多數房屋。
- “To possess” —— He *possesses* great wealth.
他有鉅財。
- “To hold” —— He *holds* a post under government.
他掌政府職務。
- “To keep” —— He *keeps* an evening school.
他辦夜校。

- “To resemble” — The two flowers *resemble* in shape.
此二種花形狀相似。
- “To differ” — But they *differ* in color.
但顏色則各異。
- “To surpass” — The one *surpasses* the other in beauty.
其一之鮮豔勝過其他。
- “To exceed” — London *exceeds* Peiping in size.
倫敦大於北平。
- “To excel” — That boy *excels* in English.
那童精於英文。
- “To belong” — The book *belongs* to me.
此書屬我。

第二類——不受意志支配之動詞 (Verbs of Involuntary Actions): 此種動詞, 又分爲四小類如下:

a. 知覺 (Perception)——表示五官動作之動詞如目視, 耳聞, 口嘗, 鼻嗅等屬之。

- “To see” — I do not *see* their actions.
我未見他們的動作。
- “To hear” — But I *hear* their voices.
但我聽得他們的聲音。
- “To feel” — I *feel* tired.
我覺疲倦。
- “To smell” — I *smell* something fragrant.
我聞得有物甚香。
- “To perceive” — I *perceive* no difference between the two.
我覺二者之間無何異點。
- “To notice” — I do not *notice* any peculiarity.
我看不出有特殊之處。

b. 情感 (Emotion)——表示吾人心中愛憎等意義之動詞屬之。

- “To love” — I *love* music.
我愛音樂。
- “To hate” — But I *hate* band music.
但我惡樂隊之音樂。
- “To like” — I *like* a simple man.
我喜樸實之人。

- “To dislike” — I *dislike* a hypocrite.
我惡偽善之人。
- “To respect” — They *respect* me
他們敬重我。
- “To despise” — They *despise* him.
他們輕視他。
- “To esteem” — I *esteem* the good.
我敬善者。
- “To fear” — I *fear* a ghost.
我怕鬼。
- “To believe” — I do not *believe* him.
我不信他。
- “To credit” — I do not *credit* the report.
我不信此報告。

c. 智識 (Knowledge) —— 表示吾人心中領悟，明瞭等意義之動詞屬之。

- “To know” — I *know* it.
我知之。
- “To remember” — I *remember* my lessons very well.
我熟記我的功課。
- “To forget” — I *forget* it.
我忘之矣。
- “To understand” — I *understand* the meaning.
我懂意義。

d. 慾望 (Desire) —— 表示吾人心中願望，慾念等意義之動詞屬之。

- “To wish” — I *wish* to be a rich man.
我欲爲一富翁。
- “To want” — I *want* to see the principal.
我欲見校長。
- “To need” — we *need* it at once.
我們立即需此。
- “To desire” — I *desire* to study.
我要讀書。

註一：狀態繼續動詞者，即動詞所表之狀態，無形中已包含繼續之意也。故此類動詞，不能再有進行式，試比較下列二句，其意自可瞭然也。

- a. He *is sitting* by the fire.
他方坐於火爐之旁。
- b. He *resembles* his father.
他酷肖乃父。

“To sit” (坐) 是一個自身絕無進行或繼續意義之動詞，蓋坐之一事，總係暫時的，決非永久或自有繼續性的，故以 “*is sitting*” 表示方在繼續之坐的動作。惟 “*resemble*” (似) 一字，外表雖無進行之形，而其內容實有繼續之意，緣一人之像某一人也，或一物之像某一物也，斷非暫時的狀態也。

註二：不受意志支配動詞者，即動詞所表之狀態或動作，非吾人所能任意操縱或制轄之謂也。如欲其留則偏去，欲其去則偏存，故動詞之本身，至少含有幾分繼續意義。如以 “*love*” (愛) 一字為例，吾人之愛某人或某物也，愛之動作，必發於自然，不知不覺中，對某人或某物，而生愛心，並非預先存心或故意而生愛。且既愛之，必持有若干時之繼續性，欲一時不愛而不可得也。

113. 無進行時候動詞用於特殊意義者——在 111 節中，曾經述明，凡無進行時候之動詞而用於特殊意義者，仍能以進行式表示進行或繼續之意。茲將常用於特殊意義之動詞，略舉幾個，以資觀摩。

(1) “To have”

- He *has* two hands. (平常意義)
他有二手。
- He *is having* his bath. (特殊意義 “*is having*” = 方洗)
他方在洗澡。

(2) “To live”

- Where does he *live*? (平常意義)
他住於何處。
- Is he still *living*? (特殊意義 “*is living*” = 正在世)
他尚生存否。

(3) “To hold”

- He *holds* a position in the post office. (平常意義)
他在郵局供職。
- They *are holding* a meeting. (特殊意義 “*is holding*” = 方開)
他們方在開會。

(4) “To keep”

He *keeps* an evening school. (平常意義)

他辦一夜校。

They *are keeping* watch. (特殊意義 “are keeping watch” = 正看守)

他們正在看守。

(5) “To stand”

The house *stands* on the hill. (平常意義)

此屋建在山上。

He *is standing* at the door (“is standing” = 方立)

他正立在門口。

(6) “To lie”

The field *lies* there. (平常意義)

田在彼處。

The cow *is lying* on the grass. (“is lying” = 方臥)

牛方臥於草中。

114. “See” 與 “look,” “hear” 與 “listen” 之區別
 — “See” 與 “look,” 其意均為“看;” “hear” 與
 “listen,” 其意均為“聽。” 同一看也聽也, 其用法各不相同,
 學者須細別之也。

“Look” 者, 注視也, 其所表看的動作係受吾人意志之支配 (“To look” denotes a voluntary action). “To look at a thing,” 謂吾人心欲注視於某物也, 其動作係暫時的, 故 “To look” 能用於進行時候也。譬說吾人注視一物, 如果物在, 則吾人便見 (to see) 之矣 (除非目盲) (If we look at anything, and the thing is there, then we see it). 由此可知 “to see” 所表看的動作, 係不受吾人意志之支配 (“To see” denotes an involuntary action), 故 “to see” 不能有進行式。

“To listen” denotes a voluntary action. “To hear” denotes an involuntary action. 譬說某君方在大講堂內演說, 吾人可往聽之。此處之“聽”意志動作也, 應用

“listen.” 但一入講堂，吾人即於不知不覺中，聽到某君之演說（除非耳聾），此“聽”無意志動作也，應用“hear.” 故“to listen”能有進行式而“to hear”則不能也。

以下四句，或能使“see”與“look,” “hear”與“listen”之異點，更爲明顯也。

I *looked* but *saw* nothing.

我張目以視但未見一物。

Look, there! Do you *see* anything?

看呀，你見有物乎。

I *listened*, but *heard* no sound.

我舉耳以聽但未聞有聲。

Listen! Do you *hear* any sound?

聽呀，你聞有聲乎。

註：“To see”如作“調查”解，“to hear”如作“審問”解，二者均可有進行式。

例：The authorities *are seeing* into the matter.

當局正在調查此事。

The judge *is hearing* the case.

法官正在審問此案。

USES OF THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

現在進行時候之用法

a. 構成公式：“Be” (現在式) + Present Participle

b. 用法要訣：凡表示一個動作，在現在時候，確在繼續進行者，用現在進行時候。

115. 現在進行時候之意義 —— 現在進行時候之用途，就在表示一個動作，在現在確在繼續進行中而尚未完了也 (The Present Progressive Tense denotes an action that is actually taking place or going on at the present moment). 譬說他於一句鐘之前，開始寫信，至現在尚在書寫中，猶未寫完。故就現在言，他的確正在做寫信動作；

換言之，現在他正在寫信也。如譯作英文，此句應為“*He is writing a letter now,*”其動作必為現在進行時候，始能表出其意義也。

現在進行時候，亦有用以表示動作在現在實際上並不在進行中者，不過在目下短時期以內，隨時確有該動作之發生耳，至動作之性質係屬暫時的而非永久也（*The Progressive Tense may also denote an action which, though not actually taking place, is going on for the time being, but not as a permanent action.*）。

例：*He is reading English with me at present.*

目下他同我讀英文。

釋例——“目下他同我讀英文，”係短時期以內暫時的動作，不過在出言之時，動作未必一定正在進行也。

116. 現在進行時候與簡單式現在時候之比較——現在進行時候與簡單式現在時候，因二者均用以表示關於現在之動作，故其用法，須認識清楚，以免誤用也。

簡單式現在時候通常表示習慣動作——在出言之時，未必實有動作之發生也。

現在進行時候表示現在確在進行之動作——在出言之時，確有動作之發生也。

例：	現在時候	現在進行時候
	<i>He writes well.</i>	<i>He is writing a letter.</i>
	他善於著述。	他方在寫信。
	(the action of writing well = permanent ability)	(the action of writing going on now)
	<i>Mr. A teaches English in this school.</i>	<i>But Mr. B is teaching in his place now.</i>
	甲君在此校教授英文。	但現在乙君代甲教授也。
	(the action of teaching English = regular occupation)	(the action of teaching taking place now)

117. 現在進行時候表示動作開始之意——現在進行時候，亦可用以表示暫時的動作 (momentary actions). 如此用法，現在進行時候，含有一種開始之意 (incipient meaning), 即動作現正開始而有極短時期之繼續也。

例: *The man is dying.*

此人要死。

The flowers are opening.

花正開。

釋例——“此人要死，”可知死的動作，已經開始。然現在氣尚未全絕，故死的動作，猶有若干時間，可以繼續；不過一俟氣斷，動作便完耳。

118. 現在進行時候替代未來時候——凡 “go,” “come,” “leave,” “start,” 等表來去行動之動詞，其現在進行時候可用以替代未來時候。不過此種用法，恆於談話語 (colloquial English) 中見之耳，在正式文學方面，殊不多觀也。

例: *He is going to America next month.*

(= *He will go to America next month.*)

下月他將赴美。

He is coming here tomorrow.

(= *He will come here tomorrow.*)

明日他將來此。

When are you leaving Shanghai?

(= *when will you leave Shanghai?*)

你將於何時離上海。

When are you starting?

(= *when will you start?*)

你何時動身。

119. 現在進行時候表示習慣動作——現在進行時候動詞，如有 “always,” “constantly” 等疏狀詞形容之者，亦有表習慣動作之意。

例: *He is always grumbling.*

他常作不平之鳴。

You are constantly laughing.

你常笑。

茲就 115, 116, 118, 各節之所述, 特舉以下之例句, 以資比較.

{	<i>I go to school every day.</i>	(現在習慣動作)
	我每日往校.	
	<i>I am going to school now.</i>	(現在進行動作)
{	現在我正往校.	
	<i>I am going to Shanghai tomorrow.</i>	(現在進行代未來)
{	明日我將往上海.	
	<i>He leaves Shanghai tomorrow.</i>	(現在時候代未來)
{	他明日離上海.	
	<i>I am going to theatre tonight</i>	(現在進行代未來)
{	今晚我往劇場.	
	<i>Where are you going?</i>	(現 在)
{	你現在往何處去	
	<i>When are you going?</i>	(未 來)
{	你何時往.	

USES OF THE PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

過去進行時候之用法

- a. 構成公式: “Be” (過去式) + Past Participle
 b. 用法要訣: 凡表示一個動作, 在過去一個指定的時候, 確在繼續進行者, 用過去進行時候.

120. 過去進行時候之意義 —— 過去進行時候之用途, 就在表示一個動作, 在過去某一個指定時候, 確在繼續進行中而尚未完了也 (The Past Progressive Tense denotes an action that was actually going on at some specified past time).

例: *I was writing a letter when you came yesterday.*

昨日你來時我正在寫信.

I was playing tennis at 4 o'clock yesterday afternoon.

昨日午後四時我正在打網球.

釋例 — “When you came yesterday” 與 “at 4 o'clock yesterday” 二語, 均為表示指定的過去時候, 在彼時寫信與打網球二個動作, 確分別在進行中也.

凡用過去進行時候動詞之句，其中大都有表確定的過去時候之疏狀語，以示動作在何時正在進行也。惟一事須注意者，即過去進行時候所佔之時間，須包含該過去時候在內也 (The Past Progressive Tense usually accompanies another verb in the past tense, the time occupied by the past progressive including the time occupied by the tense verb). 例如第一例句中，“when you came,” “當你來時”其所佔之時間乃包含在我寫信時間之內，你未來之先，我已開始寫信，你既來之後，我仍正在寫信也。但有時亦有用過去進行時候以表確定的過去時候者，如是二個動作，必在同一時間，共同進行也。

例：He *was studying* while the others *were playing*.

當別人方在遊戲之時，他正在讀書。(讀書遊戲二個動作同時進行)

121. 過去進行時候表示“加重語勢”與“繼續”——過去進行時候，亦有用以加重動作本身之語勢與表示動作之繼續性。

例：加重語勢 (to lay more stress on the action itself)

I *was just thinking* so.

我正想此。

表示繼續 (to denote continuance of the action)

I *was reading* all day.

我終日讀書。

USES OF THE FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE

未來進行時候之用法

a. 構成公式：
$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{“Shall be”} \\ \text{“Will be”} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Present Participle}$$

b. 用法要訣：凡表示一個動作，預計在未來一個指定的時候，正在繼續進行者，用未來進行時候。

122. 未來進行時候之意義——未來進行時候之用途，就在表示一個動作，預計在未來某一個指定時候，確在繼續進行中而尚未完了也 (The Future Progressive Tense denotes an action that will be actually going on at some specified future time).

例: I *shall be waiting* for you at the station at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.

明日早晨八時我將正在車站候你。

He *will be teaching* if you go now.

如你現在就去他將正在授課也。

釋例—“At 8 o'clock tomorrow morning”與“if you go now”二語，均為表示指定的未來時候，在那時等候與授課，二個動作，確將分別在進行中也。

第 十 二 章

USES OF THE

PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

完了進行式各時候之用法

123. 完了進行式各時候之意義——完了進行時候 (Perfect Progressive Tenses) 者，即完了時候與進行時候二者拼合而成者也。其意義係表示一個動作從某時候開始繼續進行，直至某一個指定的時候，而在某一個指定的時候，該動作仍在繼續進行也 (The Perfect Progressive Tense is used to denote the continuance of an action from a certain time up to some specified time at which the action is still continuing). 故從某時候至某一個指定的時候，因動作已經進行若干時，可謂完了部分；而在某一個指定的時候，因動作仍在進行，可謂進行部分。

例: *I have been studying English for five years.* (現在完了進行時候)
 [= *I have been studying for five years* (現在完了部分) and
am now studying still (現在進行部分).]
 我研究英文已五年於茲矣。

釋例—五年之前,我開始研究英文直至現在,在現在我仍繼續研究英文也。
I had been writing about an hour when he came. (過去完了進行時候)

[= *I had been waiting about an hour when he came* (過去完了部分) and *when he came I was waiting still* (過去進行部分).]
 至他來時我已等候了一小時矣。

釋例—一小時之前,我開始等候直等到他來,他來時我仍在等候也。

I shall have been studying English five years by April next.

[= *I shall have been studying five years by April next* (未來完了部分) and *shall be studying still in April next* (未來進行部分).]
 至明年四月我研究英文將要五年矣。

釋例—我研究英文到明年四月將為五年,在明年四月仍將繼續研究也。

註: 英國 Alfred S. West 氏對於完了進行時候,所舉之定義,亦甚簡明,茲特譯如下,以資參考:“完了進行時候是用以表示一個動作在—指定的時候,(現在,過去,或未來)已經完了,但該動作一經完了仍舊如前繼續進行也。”

124. 完了進行式各時候用法之通則 —— 凡一個動作,其繼續進行以至於某時候而在此時仍在進行者,即用完了進行時候動詞,以表該動作可也 (Use the Perfect Progressive Tense to denote the continuance of an action up to some specified time at which the action is going on still).

USES OF THE PRESENT

PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

現在完了進行時候之用法

構成公式: $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{“Have been”} \\ \text{“Has been”} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Present Participle}$

125. 現在完了進行時候之意義——現在完了進行時候,是用以表示一個動作,從過去某時候為始,繼續進行以至

於現在 (The Present Perfect Progressive Tense is used to denote the continuance of an action from certain past time till the present moment).

例: *It has been raining* since Saturday last, and if it keeps on raining, the river will overflow.

自前星期六以至於今一向下雨, 倘此後再繼續下雨則河水將泛溢矣。

He has been suffering from influenza, but I hope he will be all right in a day or two.

他正患流行性感冒, 但我望一二日內他當可痊愈矣。

釋例—在第二例句中, 雖未明指時候, 然他患病已若干時而至今病仍未愈, 可斷言也。

126. 現在完了進行時候與現在完了時候之比較——現在完了進行時候, 着重在於動作之本身, 即動作從過去某時候為始, 繼續進行以迄於現在。現在完了時候, 着重不在動作之本身, 而在因動作所留之結果而與現在有關者, 至於動作之繼續——並不繼續進行於現在, 至於動作之完了——在任何過去時候, 均可完了。

(Present Perfect Progressive — the action itself is important — the continuance of the action up to the present moment.)

Present Perfect — the result of the action is important — the action may have ended at any past time.)

例: *I have been studying* English these five years. (現在完了進行)
近五年來我一向研究英文。(五年之前, 開始研究英文, 繼續以至於現在)

I have studied English for five years. (現在完了)

我已研究英文五年矣。(因研究英文五年, 故現在懂英文)

127. 現在完了時候替代現在完了進行時候——凡表示狀態或存在 (state or being) 之動詞，欲用以表示繼續自過去起以至於現在者，恆以現在完了時候式代之；因此類動詞，根本不能有進行時候式，緣其本身已具有繼續或進行之意義也。但表示動作之動詞，則不得以現在完了時候代之，仍須以現在完了進行時候，以表過去之繼續而迄于現在也。(參閱 83, 111 節.)

- 例: a. Where *have you been* all this while?
這些時你一向在何處。
How long *has he been* ill?
他患病已有幾久矣。
I *have known* him from a child.
我自童年即認識他。
This house *has always belonged* to our family.
此屋一向屬於吾家。
I should like to go very much, I *have long wanted* to be there.
我很喜去,我久已欲往彼處。
I *have not seen* you for a long time.
我久已未見你。

- b. { *I have been* at work. (狀態繼續故用現在完了)
我向在工作。
I have been working. (動作繼續故用現在完了進行)
我一向工作。
He has been ill. (狀態繼續故用現在完了)
他一向患病。
He has been suffering from influenza. (動作繼續故用現在完了進行)
他久患流行性感冒。
Where have you been all this while?—*I have been* in my room. (狀態繼續故用現在完了)
這些時你一向在何處?——我在房中。
What have you been doing all this while?—*I have been reading* the book you have lent me. (動作繼續故用現在完了進行)
這些時你一向作何事?——我在閱你借給我之書。了進行)

試再比較以下兩方例句：

- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|--|---|---|---|---|
| a. | 誤 | 正 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <table border="0" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; padding-right: 10px;">{</td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>I am knowing him well.</i>
 我極認識他。
 (現在正在繼續進行) </td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>I know him well.</i>
 I know him well. </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; padding-right: 10px;">{</td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>I have been knowing him for ten years.</i>
 我認識他已十年矣。
 (從過去繼續以至於現在) </td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>I have known him for ten years.</i>
 I have known him for ten years. </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; padding-right: 10px;">{</td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>He is living in Shanghai.</i>
 他居於上海。
 (現在正在繼續進行) </td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>He lives in Shanghai.</i>
 He lives in Shanghai. </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; padding-right: 10px;">{</td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>He has been living there for five years.</i>
 他居於彼處已五年矣。
 (從過去繼續以至於現在) </td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;"> <i>He has lived there for five years.</i>
 He has lived there for five years. </td> </tr> </table> | | | { | <i>I am knowing him well.</i>
我極認識他。
(現在正在繼續進行) | <i>I know him well.</i>
I know him well. | { | <i>I have been knowing him for ten years.</i>
我認識他已十年矣。
(從過去繼續以至於現在) | <i>I have known him for ten years.</i>
I have known him for ten years. | { | <i>He is living in Shanghai.</i>
他居於上海。
(現在正在繼續進行) | <i>He lives in Shanghai.</i>
He lives in Shanghai. | { | <i>He has been living there for five years.</i>
他居於彼處已五年矣。
(從過去繼續以至於現在) | <i>He has lived there for five years.</i>
He has lived there for five years. |
| { | <i>I am knowing him well.</i>
我極認識他。
(現在正在繼續進行) | <i>I know him well.</i>
I know him well. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| { | <i>I have been knowing him for ten years.</i>
我認識他已十年矣。
(從過去繼續以至於現在) | <i>I have known him for ten years.</i>
I have known him for ten years. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| { | <i>He is living in Shanghai.</i>
他居於上海。
(現在正在繼續進行) | <i>He lives in Shanghai.</i>
He lives in Shanghai. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| { | <i>He has been living there for five years.</i>
他居於彼處已五年矣。
(從過去繼續以至於現在) | <i>He has lived there for five years.</i>
He has lived there for five years. | | | | | | | | | | | | |

- b. 同一動詞，有表狀態者，亦有表動作者，故用於進行時候時，宜先審欲表達之意義。如為狀態，則用現在時候或現在完了時候以表繼續。如為動作，則用現在進行時候，或現在完了進行時候，以表繼續。

- | | | |
|---|---|---------|
| <i>The temple stands on the hill.</i>
此廟位於山上。 | } | (狀態之繼續) |
| <i>It has stood there for a century.</i>
此廟建於山上已百年矣。 | | |
| <i>He is standing at the door.</i>
他方立於門口。 | } | (動作之繼續) |
| <i>He has been standing there for an hour.</i>
他立於門口已一小時矣。 | | |

128. 現在進行時候與現在完了進行時候之比較——現在進行時候與現在完了進行時候，二者俱用以表示動作之繼續進行者。但其意義與用法，彼此頗有不同之處；茲特將其異點，詳述於下：

現在進行時候者，謂一個動作在現在確在繼續進行中也 (action actually going on at the present moment).

現在完了進行時候者，謂一個動作從過去某時候起，繼續進行以至於現在也 (action continuing from certain past time till the present moment).

故根據以上所述，現在進行時候之表示繼續，為現在之繼續；而現在完了進行時候之表示繼續，實為過去之繼續而及於現在者。故為明顯時間計，凡用現在完了進行時候動詞之句語中，大抵常加表“自動作開始繼續以至於現在”之表整個時間之疏狀短句，如“for ten years,” “since last Saturday,” “from a child,” “how long 等，以示動作確由過去繼續進行以至於現在也 (The Present Perfect Progressive Tense is generally accompanied by such adverbial phrases as “for ten years,” etc. to denote the past time from which the action has been continuing up to the present moment).

註：表“狀態”或“存在”之動詞，如表現在之繼續，用現在時候。表過去之繼續而及於現在者，用現在完了時候。

茲為易於明瞭計，特將 125, 126, 127, 128, 各節之意義，彙合而成一表如下：

現在完了時候與現在完了進行時候比較表		
	動詞表動作者 (Action)	動詞表狀態者 (State)
現在之繼續	He is studying. (present progressive)	I know him. (present indefinite)
過去之繼續以迄於現在者	He has been studying since morning. (present perfect progressive)	I have known him long. (present perfect)

129. 現在完了進行時候替代現在完了時候——現在完了進行時候，如有“today,” “just,” “lately,” 等疏狀詞以形容之者，亦可替代現在完了時候。如斯用法，則其所指之動作，並不繼續以至於現在。至其着重點仍在動作之本身，並不因其替代現在完了時候，而移到動作之結果也。

- 例: 現在完了 (The result is important) 現在完了進行替代現在完了 (The action itself is important)
- I *have read* an account of it in the papers *today*. “I *have been reading* *today* that Newton was led to make a great discovery by seeing an apple fall from a tree. What was there wonderful about the apple falling?”
(=Therefore I know all about it.) 今日我閱書知奈端因見一個蘋果由樹上落下而發見一極重要學理。一個蘋果落下何足奇哉。
我已於今日報上閱見此事之詳情矣。
- I know it. My brother *has just told* it. Has your brother told you? Yes, *he has just been telling* me about it.
我知之,吾弟恰已告我矣。 令弟已告你否? 然,他適已告我矣。
- I have not finished that business yet. I *have not attended* to it of late. I had no time to do it. I *have been attending* to other matters of late.
那事我尙未辦了。近來我實未專心爲之也。 我無暇爲此。近來我專辦他事也。

USES OF THE PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

過去完了進行時候之用法

構成公式: “Had been” + Present Participle

130. 過去完了進行時候之意義——過去完了進行時候, 是用以表示一個動作, 繼續進行以至於一個指定的過去時候 (The Past Perfect Progressive Tense denotes an action continuing up to some specified past time).

例: I *had been waiting* an hour when he came.
至他來時我已等候了一小時矣。

My servant knew a little English, for he *had been living* in an English family before I engaged him.

吾僕略知英語, 因在我未雇他之先, 他一向居於英國人家也。

釋例一第一句中 “writing” 動作, 繼續直至 “when he came.” 第二句中 “living” 動作, 繼續直至 “before I engaged him.”

131. 過去進行時候與過去完了進行時候之比較——過去進行時候與過去完了進行時候，二者俱用以表示過去動作之繼續進行者；而其意義與用法，則各不同。

過去進行時候者。謂一個動作在某指定的過去時候，確在繼續進行中也 (action continuing up to some specified past time)。

過去完了進行時候者，謂一個動作繼續進行以至於某一個指定的過去時候也 (action continuing up to some specified past time)。

故根據以上之定義，凡用過去完了進行時候動詞之句語中，大抵須另有一個過去時候，以示動作繼續至於過去何時也 (The Past Perfect Progressive Tense is usually accompanied by another verb in the past tense to denote the time up to which the action had been continuing)。

132. 過去完了進行時候替代過去完了時候——過去完了進行時候，亦可用以替代過去完了時候。如此用法，則表示先前動作並不繼續進行以至於後的動作之時也 (to denote the prior action not continuing up to the time of the subsequent action)。不過其着重處為動作之本身，非因動作而起事物之狀態也。(參閱 129 節。)

例： 過去完了

(The result is important)

A boy who *had learned* English (=A boy who knew English) should be able to read an English newspaper.

凡習過英文之學生應能閱讀英文報紙。

(過去完了進行替代過去完了)

(The action itself is important)

A boy who *had been learning* English (=A boy who had been engaged in the act of learning English) should have a good dictionary.

凡學習英文之學生應備一本良好字典。

He said that he knew all about My boy who *had been reading* it, for he *had read* an account about Newton and his great discovery, asked me what there of it in the papers.

他云此事他已盡量知道，因他
已於報上閱見之也。

was wonderful about the apple falling.

吾子因其正讀奈端及其發見之故事而問我曰，關於蘋果之下落何足奇哉。

USES OF THE FUTURE

PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

未來完了進行時候之用法

構成公式： $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{"Shall"} \\ \text{"Will"} \end{array} \right\} \text{have been"} + \text{Present Participle}$

133. 未來完了進行時候之意義——未來完了進行時候，是用以表示一個動作，繼續進行以至於一個指定的未來時候 (The Future Perfect Progressive Tense denotes the continuance of an action till some specified future time)

例：It *shall have been studying* English five years by April next.
至明年四月我將接續研究英文五年矣。

It *will have been raining* a whole month the day after tomorrow.

到後天雨已連下一個足月矣。

釋例——第一句中“studying”動作將繼續至明年四月。在第二句中，下雨動作恐將繼續至後天。

134. 未來進行時候與未來完了進行時候之比較——未來進行時候與未來完了進行時候，俱用以表示未來動作之繼續進行者。但其意義與用法，則各不同。

未來進行時候者，謂一個動作在某一個指定的未來時候將正在繼續進行中也 (The Future Progressive Tense denotes an action actually going on at some specified future time).

未來完了進行時候者，謂一個動作繼續進行將至於一個指定的未來時候也 (The Future Perfect Progressive Tense denotes an action continuing up to some specified future time).

所以凡用未來完了進行時候動詞之句語中，大抵常有一個表示未來時候之疏狀短句，以示動作將繼續進行以至未來何時也 (The Future Perfect Progressive Tense is usually accompanied by an adverbial phrase of definite future time to denote the time up to which the action will have been continuing).

第 十 三 章

THE TENSE OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

命 令 語 氣 之 時 候

135. 命令語氣動詞時候之數目 —— 命令語氣動詞，不論其所表示者為命令 (command)，或為訓誨 (precept)，或為請求 (entreaty)，只有一個現在時候，並無過去，未來，完了，進行等時候 (The Imperative Mood has only one tense—the Present).

136. 命令語氣動詞之句主 —— 命令語氣動詞之句主 (subject)，只有一個第二人稱“you，”且通常省去而不表出者 (The Imperative Mood is only in the second person and the subject “you” is usually understood).

137. 命令語氣動詞之形式 —— 命令語氣動詞，因其只有一個現在時候與只有一個第二人稱，故其形以原形動詞 (root verb) 為主，不論單數複數皆不變化。

命令語氣動詞之形式	
句 主 人 稱	單 或 複
第 二 人 稱 You (understood)	Root Verb

- 例: (You) *go out.* (命 令)
走出去。
(You) *work hard.* (訓 誨)
勤於事。
(You) *help me, please.* (請 求)
請助我。

註: 對第一人稱或第三人稱所發命令, 大抵常用“let”一字以表示之。此種命令, 亦稱間接命令 (indirect imperative) 以其發令間接行之, 非發命令者 (speaker) 對受命令者 (person spoken to) 直接行之也。但“let”其本身仍為命令語氣之第二人稱動詞也。

- 例: 單 複
第一人稱 *Let me go.* (You let me to go.) *Let us go.*
讓我去。 讓我們去。
第三人稱 *Let him go.* *Let them go.*
讓他去。 讓他們去。

第 十 四 章

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

假 設 語 氣 之 時 候

138. 假設語氣之定義——假設語氣 (Subjunctive Mood)者, 謂一個動詞所表之動作或狀態係 (1) 疑惑或不確定者, 或 (2) 完全假設或與事實相反者 (The Subjunctive Mood expresses (1) doubt or uncertainty or (2) pure

supposition or that contrary to fact). 其英文名所以稱爲“subjunctive”者，緣假設語氣動詞所在之子句，係表示條件或假設 (condition)，絕對不能獨立，必須依附於另一個主要子句，方能成爲有完全意義之文句也。

例: If he *come* tomorrow, I will go. (不確定者)

倘他明日來，我決去。(明日他準來與否，現在不能斷定)

If I *were* you, I would not do it. (與事實相反者)

倘我是你，我決不爲此。(我是我，你是你，我決不能變爲你，所以“倘我是你”係一種假設，決非事實也)

139. 假設語氣之句式——假設語氣動詞所在之子句，既爲附屬子句，須依附於另一個主要子句，方能成句。由此可以推知凡有假設語氣動詞之句語，必爲複雜句 (complex sentence) 也。如是，附屬子句——即假設語氣動詞所在之子句——對主要子句表條件 (condition)，而主要子句對附屬子句則表結果 (consequence) 也。此種氣語，在組織方面，固爲“complex;”但在意義方面，通常稱曰“條件句”(conditional sentence)。其表條件部分(即附屬子句)曰條件子句 (conditional clause)，或曰 antecedent，表結果部分(即主要子句)曰結果子句 (conditioned clause)，或曰 consequent。

Conditional Sentence = Antecedent + Consequent.

例: If he *come* tomorrow, I will go. (條件句)

┌ Antecedent ─┐ ┌ Consequent ─┐

If I *were* you, I would not do it. (條件句)

┌ Antecedent ─┐ ┌ Consequent ─┐

140. 假設語氣時候之總數——假設語氣動詞，所有時候之數目，與實敘語氣動詞所有時候之數相等，總共十二個：計簡單式現在，過去，及未來時候，現在，過去，及未來完了時候，現在，過去，及未來進行時候，現在，過去，及未來

完了進行時候。但實際常用者，以現在時候，過去時候，未來時候，及過去完了時候居多。其餘如進行時候，完了進行時候等，皆不常用，大半以實敘語氣動詞各該時候分別代之也。

141. 假設語氣動詞各時候之構造——假設語氣動詞各時候之構造，大致與實敘語氣動詞各時候之構造相彷彿，惟下列二點乃異於實敘語氣者。

- (1) 假設語氣動詞，並無數 (number) 與人稱 (person) 之顯著變化，故就各時候之構造言，對於句主之數與人稱毋須顧及之也。譬如現在時候，在實敘語氣，其第三人稱單數，原形動詞之後，須加“s”或“es”方符 rule of concord; 而在假設語氣，不問句主之數與人稱，概用原形動詞，並無語尾上之變化。又如“to have”一字，現在時候第三人稱單數，在實敘語氣應為“has,”但在假設語氣，仍為原形“have.”

例: $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{If he } come, \dots \\ \text{If he } have \text{ much money, } \dots \end{array} \right\} \text{(假設語氣)}$
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{He } comes. \\ \text{He } has \text{ much money.} \end{array} \right\} \text{(實敘語氣)}$

- (2) 假設語氣動詞之未來時候，如係表示純粹未來 (simple or non-volitional future), 不論句主之人稱，概用“should”+root; 不如實敘語氣，第一人稱用“shall”或“should”+root; 第二第三人稱，用“will”或“would”+root. 如係表示意志未來 (future implying willingness or determination), 概用“would”+root.

142. 假設語氣動詞各時候構造之公式——假設語氣動詞各時候構造之公式，與實敘語氣動詞各時候構造之公式，大致亦屬相同，且比較實敘語氣，更形簡單；緣每一個時候之形式，皆屬一律，不因句主之人稱與數，而有所變化也。

茲將十二個時候構造之公式，依序列表於下。

註：假設語氣動詞所在之子句，其前常冠以“if”或與“if”相類意義之緊合詞，以與主要子句相連接；故亦有稱“if”為假設語氣之標記者。

現在時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
“If”	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	Root Verb

例： If I go. If we go.
 If you go If you go.
 If he go. If they go.

過去時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
“If”	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	Past Form

例： If I went. If we went.
 If you went. If you went
 If he went. If they went

未 來 時 候

(純 粹 未 來)

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
“If” {	第一人稱	} “should” + Root
	第二人稱	
	第三人稱	

(意 志 未 來)

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
“If” {	第一人稱	} “would” + Root
	第二人稱	
	第三人稱	

例:

If I should go.	If we should go.
If you should go.	If you should go.
If he should go.	If they should go.
If I would go.	If we would go.
If you would go.	If you would go.
If he would go.	If they would go.

現 在 完 了 時 候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
“If” {	第一人稱	} “have” + Past Participle
	第二人稱	
	第三人稱	

例:

If I have gone.	If we have gone.
If you have gone.	If you have gone.
If he have gone.	If they have gone.

過去完了時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} had" + Past Participle

- 例: If I had gone. If we had gone.
 If you had gone. If you had gone.
 If he had gone. If they had gone.

未來完了時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} should have" + Past Participle

- 例: If I should have gone. If we should have gone.
 If you should have gone. If you should have gone.
 If he should have gone. If they should have gone.

現在進行時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} be" + Present Participle

- 例: If I be going. If we be going.
 If you be going. If you be going.
 If he be going. If they be going.

過去進行時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} were" + Present Participle

- 例: If I were going. If we were going.
 If you were going. If you were going.
 If he were going. If they were going.

未來進行時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} should be" + Present Participle

- 例: If I should be going. If we should be going.
 If you should be going. If you should be going.
 If he should be going. If they should be going.

現在完了進行時候

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} have been" + Present Participle

- 例: If I have been going. If we have been going.
 If you have been going. If you have been going.
 If he have been going. If they have been going.

過去完了進行時候

	句主之人稱	單或複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} had been" + Present Participle

- 例: If I had been going. If we had been going.
 If you had been going. If you had been going.
 If he had been going. If they had been going.

未來完了進行時候

	句主之人稱	單或複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} should have been" + Present Participle

- 例: If I should have been going. If we should have been going.
 If you should have been going. If you should have been going.
 If he should have been going. If they should have been going.

以上所列各式皆屬自動態,其受動態各式,茲特分列於下.

現在時候 (受動)

	句主之人稱	單或複
"If {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} be" + Past Participle

- 例: If I be rewarded. If we be rewarded.
 If you be rewarded. If you be rewarded.
 If he be rewarded. If they be rewarded.

過去時候 (受動)

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If" {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} "were" + Past Participle

- 例: If I were rewarded. If we were rewarded.
 If you were rewarded. If you were rewarded.
 If he were rewarded. If they were rewarded.

未來時候 (受動)

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If" {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} "should be" + Past Participle

- 例: If I should be rewarded. If we should be rewarded.
 If you should be rewarded. If you should be rewarded.
 If he should be rewarded. If they should be rewarded.

現在完了時候 (受動)

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If" {	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	} "have been" + Past Participle

- 例: If I have been rewarded. If we have been rewarded.
 If you have been rewarded. If you have been rewarded.
 If he have been rewarded. If they have been rewarded.

過去完了時候 (受動)

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	had been" + Past Participle

例: If I had been rewarded. If we had been rewarded.
 If you had been rewarded. If you had been rewarded.
 If he had been rewarded. If they had been rewarded.

未來完了時候 (受動)

	句主之人稱	單 或 複
"If	第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	should have been" + Past Participle

例: If I should have been rewarded. If we should have been rewarded.
 If you should have been rewarded. If you should have been rewarded.
 If he should have been rewarded. If they should have been rewarded.

143. 假設語氣 "To Be" 各時候之形式——假設語氣 "to be," 獨有特殊形式, 茲將其六個時候之形, 彙列於下:

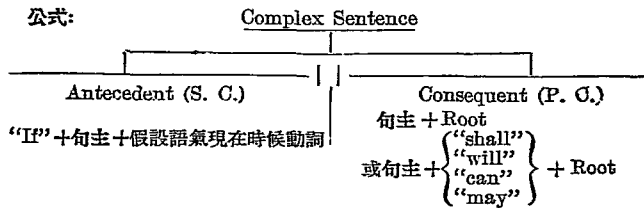
時 候	句主之人稱	形 式
現在時候	第 一	If I be
	第 二	If you be
	第 三	If he be
過去時候	第 一	If I were
	第 二	If you were
	第 三	If he were
未來時候	第 一	If I should be
	第 二	If you should be
	第 三	If he should be
現在完了時候	第 一	If I have been
	第 二	If you have been
	第 三	If he have been
過去完了時候	第 一	If I had been
	第 二	If you had been
	第 三	If he had been
未來完了時候	第 一	If I should have been
	第 二	If you should have been
	第 三	If he should have been

註一：句主如爲複數，其式與單數相同，如 "If we be," "If they were."

註二：假設語氣 "to be" 之現在時候，近時不甚通用，常以實敘語氣 "to be" 之現在時候代之，如 "If I am," "If he is."

THE USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT TENSE

假設語氣現在時候之用法



實在時候: Present or Future (現在或未來).

實在意義: Doubt or Uncertainty (疑惑或不確定的動作或狀態).

用法要訣: 凡表示一個動作或狀態,在現在發言之時,不能確定其必有或必無者,用假設語氣現在時候。

144. 假設語氣現在時候之意義——假設語氣現在時候,係用以表示一個動作或狀態是疑惑的或不確定的,——即在發言之時,不能斷定所言之動作或狀態為必有或必無,必然或必不然也。其名義雖稱現在,而其實際所指者,則未來之事也 (The Subjunctive Present expresses doubt or uncertainty usually joined to futurity). 至在表結果子句中 (consequent), 其云謂動詞之式, 大致亦屬固定, 即 indicative future “shall” 或 “will” + root 或 potential present “can” 或 “may” + root, 如此, 可與原形子句中假設語氣現在時候動詞所指之未來之事, 相呼應也。

假設語氣現在時候, 雖為表示不確定的動作或狀態, 然其所言者多少究係事實, 非完全虛構者可比。故近今之趨向, 漸有廢棄“假設語氣現在時候”不用之勢, 凡欲表示疑惑或不確定之事, 恆以實敘語氣現在時候 (indicative present) 或以 “should” + root 或 “may” + root 二式代之也。

- 例: If the report *be* (或 *is*) true, there will be a war.
 倘報告果確,則戰事不能免矣。
 = It is doubtful whether the report may be true or may not be true.
 = If it may be true, there will be a war.
 = If it may not be true, there will not be a war.
- If it *rain* (或 *rains*) tomorrow, I shall not start.
 若明日天雨,我不起行矣。
 = It is doubtful whether it may or may not rain.
 = If it may rain, I shall not start.
 = If it may not rain, I shall start.
- 如將以上二句附屬子句中之動詞,易為 *indicative present*, 或易為 “*should*” + root 或 “*may*” + root, 其意義並無若何差異, 仍為表示 “*doubt*” 或 “*uncertainty*” 也。
- If the report *be* true,....
 = If the report *is* true,....
 = If the report *should be* true,....
 = If the report *may be* true,....
- If it *rains*,....
 = If it *rains*,....
 = If it *should rain*,....
 = If it *may rain*,....

假設語氣現在時候之用途

145. 用於 “*Clauses of Condition*” 者——凡以“*if*,” “*unless*,” 或 “*provided*” 所接引之條件子句 (*subordinate clause of condition*) 而含有 “*doubt*” 或 “*uncertainty*” 意義者, 其云謂動詞應為假設語氣現在時候。如果該條件子句並不含有疑惑或不確定意義者, 其動詞必須為實敘語氣現在時候。

- 例: *Provided he be* not too old, I will employ him.
 如果他不過於年老, 我願僱他。
- 比較: *If he is* old, he is still strong. (並不含有疑惑或不確定意義)
 即使他已老邁, 他仍強健也。

If God *be* with us, who will be against us?

如果上帝追隨我們，尙有何人敢反對我們呢。

比較: If God is not above us, why should we pray?

(並不含有疑惑或不確定意義)

設上帝不在我們之上，我們又何必祈禱呢。

Unless he *consent*, we can do nothing.

除非他允諾，我們任何事不能爲。

Provided he *confess* his fault, I will pardon him.

如他認過，我決恕他。

註: 照近今之趨勢，上列各句中，雖含有“doubt”或“uncertainty”意義，但用 subjunctive present 以表之者已屬極少，大都皆以 indicative present 代之也。

1. Provided he *is* not too old,...
2. If good *is* with us, ..
3. Unless he *consent*,....
4. Provided he *confesses* his fault,....

146. 用於“Clauses of Concession”者——凡以“though,” “whether,” “however,” “whoever,” “whatever,” “whichever”等所接引之反對子句 (subordinate clause of concession) 而含有“doubt”意義者，其云謂動詞常爲假設語氣現在時候。倘無“doubt”之意，其動詞應爲實語氣現在時候。

例: Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in him.

他縱或殺我，然我仍信託他。

比較: Though he *slays* him, he still pities him. (並無疑惑之意)

他雖殺他，然仍憫他也。

I will go, whether he *allow* me or not.

無論他許不許，我決去。

Whoever he *be*, he cannot be a good man.

不論他是誰，他決非善人。

Whether the report *be* true or false, something must have happened.

不論報告真假，必有事發生也。

例：以上各相反子句內之 subjunctive present, 大概均可代以“may” + root, 其意並無大異也

1. Though he *may* slay me,....
2. ...whether he *may* allow or not.
3. Whoever he *may* be,....
4. Whether the report *may* be true or false,....

147. 用於“Clause of Purpose”者——凡以繫合詞“that”或“lest”所接引之目的子句(subordinate clause of purpose), 其云謂動詞, 常為假設語氣現在時候。不過在現今此種用法, 已逐漸減少; 大都在“that”之後用“may” + root, (過去時候“might” + root) 在“lest”之後用“should” + root 以代之也。

例：Lock the door that no man *enter*.

將門鎖好俾無人能進來。

= Lock the door that no man *may* enter

比較：I *locked* the door that no man *might* enter

Take care lest you *fail*.

當心, 否則你要失敗。

= Take care lest you *should* fail.

= Take care that you *may* not fail.

I shall keep your purse lest you *lose* it.

我將保管你的錢袋深恐你失之也。

= I shall keep your purse lest you *should* lose it.

= I shall keep your purse that you *may* not lose it.

148. 用於“Clause of Time”者——凡以繫合詞“fill,” “before,” 或“ere,” 所接引之表時間疏狀子句, 其云謂動詞亦常為假設語氣現在時候。但現今此種用法, 亦已漸歸淘汰; 其替代者非以實敘語氣現在時候, 即用“should” + root.

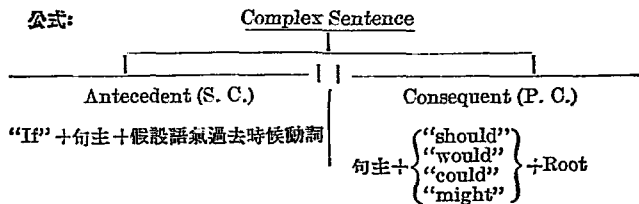
- 例: We had better wait till the storm *be* over.
 我們寧稍待至暴雨之後。
 = We had better wait till the storm *is* over.
 = We had better wait till the storm *should be* over.
 The tree will wither long before it *fall*.
 此樹未倒之前恐早凋謝矣。
 = The tree will wither long before it *falls*.
 = The tree will wither long before it *should fall*.
 He that marries ere he *be* wise, will die ere he *thrive*.
 凡知識未充實以前遽行結婚者未至騰達必遭天亡也。
 = He that marries ere he *is* wise, will die ere he thrives.

149. 用於 “Wish” 或 “Prayer” 者——凡表示願望 (wish) 或祈禱 (prayer) 之句, 其云謂動詞, 必為假設語氣現在時候; 但 “may” + root 亦常有用之者。

- 例: God *bless* you!
 願上帝賜福於你。
 = *May* God *bless* you!
 = I wish that God *may bless* you!
 Heaven *help* him!
 願天佑他。
 = *May* Heaven *help* him!
 Long *live* the Chinese Republic!
 祝中華民國萬歲。
 = *May* the Chinese Republic *live* long!

THE USES OF SUBJUNCTIVE PAST TENSE

假設語氣過去時候之用法



- 實在時候: Present (現在).
實在意義: Denial of the Present (推翻或違反現在之事實).
用法要訣: 凡表示一個假定的動作或狀態恰與現在之事實絕對相違反者, 用假設語氣過去時候.

150. 假設語氣過去時候之意義——假設語氣過去時候, 係用以表示一個動作或狀態是完全假定或虛構的 (pure supposition), 絕對不是事實, 其所言者, 適與現有事實相違反也 (The Subjunctive Past denotes pure supposition and implies the contrary of what is expressed). 假設語氣過去時候, 其過去只在形式或名稱上耳, 至其內容實在之意義, 却言現在之事, 並非過去之事, 此點學者須加以注意也 (The Subjunctive Past is past in form only; the matter relates to the present). 總之假設語氣過去時候之獨一用途, 是在反對或推翻現在之事實 (The Subjunctive Past denies the present fact). 此種語法, 即吾人所謂反面文章也; 如現在明明無此事, 偏說其有, 某事明明現在不可能, 偏說可能之一類句法是也. 所以欲就現在之事實而反其說者, 假設語氣過去時候乃唯一之工具也.

至於結果子句中之云謂動詞, 亦係規定用 simple conditional form “should,” “would,” “could,” 或 “might” + root; 蓋 simple conditional form, 亦含有反對現在事實之意, 如此與原因子句中所表者適相符合也.

例: If I *were* a bird, I *could fly* to you. (假設過去時候)

倘使我現在是鳥, 我能飛到你處也.

But I am not a bird, I can not fly to you. (現在事實)

If I *had* ten thousand dollars, I *would buy* this diamond.

(假設過去時候)

設我現在有銀萬元, 我決購此鑽石.

But I have not ten thousand dollars, I will not buy this diamond.

If I were rich (but I am not).

If I had a son (but I have no son).

If I could (but I can not).

If I might (but I may not).

If I had to go (but I have not to go).

151. 假設語氣現在時候與假設語氣過去時候之比較——假設語氣現在時候，係表示動作或狀態是不確定的，即在發言之時，不能斷其必有或必無也。而假設語氣過去時候，係表示動作或狀態是完全假定的，即對於目前之事實完全相反者，或現在決無如所言之事實也。

例: If this *be* true,.... (假設現在)

= But it is doubtful whether it be true or not.

= It may be true or may not be true.

If this *were* true,.... (假設過去)

= But it is not true.

假設語氣過去時候之用途

152. 用以推翻或反對現在事實者——凡以契合詞“if,” “even if,” 或 “suppose” 所接引之條件子句，其云謂動詞如為假設語氣過去時候，則其所言者，必與現在之事實相違反，即目前決不能有如該子句中所述之事也。

例: { If I *were* rich, I *would* buy a motor car. (假定)

若我現在富有，我決購置汽車。

= But I do not buy a motor car, because I am not rich.

(現在事實)

{ If I *did* not write it down, I *should* forget it. (假定)

如我現在不將此記下，我恐忘之矣。

= I write it down that I may not forget it. (現在事實)

- { If I *were* God, I *could* help you. (假定)
 設我是上帝, 我能助你。
 = But I cannot help you because I am not God. (現在事實)
- { If I *tried*, I *might* succeed. (假定)
 若我稍爲努力, 我或可成功也。
 = But I do not succeed because I will not try. (現在事實)

153. 用於“Wish”之後以表希望難以如願者——假設語氣過去時候, 用於“wish”之後者, 係表示所願望之事, 現在難期實現或不能達到, 且內中含有“惜乎”或“恨不”一類意義也 (The verb “wish” followed by the Subjunctive Past expresses unattainable desire implying regret).

- 例: I wish I *were* a bird. (假定希望)
 我願我鳥也。
 = I am sorry I am not a bird. (現在事實)
 惜乎我非鳥也。
- I wish I *could* fly. (假定希望)
 我願我能飛。
 = I am sorry I cannot fly. (現在事實)
 我恨不能飛。

“Wish”之後用假設語氣過去時候動詞, 則表示者爲現在不能達到之願望。但“wish”之後, 如用 infinitive, 則表示者, 又爲另一意義矣。

- I wish I *were* rich. = I am sorry I am not rich.
 我願富有。 = 惜乎我非富有。
- I wish *to be* rich. = I want to become rich.
 我願富有。 = 我希望富有。

154. 用於“As if”或“As though”之後者——凡以 conjunction phrase “as if,” 或 “as though” 所接引之狀貌子句 (adverbial clause of manner), 其云謂動詞必爲假

設語氣過去時候，蓋其所述者；亦與現在事實相反之動作或狀態，即彷彿如此，其實現在並非如此也。至於該子句所依附之主要子句，通常略去而不表出，因從上下文可以知之也。故句語有“as if”或“as though”者必為 elliptical sentence 也。

例: He talks as if he were a mad man. (其實他現在並非瘋漢, 不他談話宛如一個瘋漢。過狀其談話之形態耳)

= He talks as he would talk if he were a mad man.

He looks as if he were sick.

他視之若有病。 (其實他現在並無病, 不過狀其貌耳)

= He looks as he would look if he were sick.

155. 用於“As it were”中者——“As it were”為一種俗語 (idiom), 其意等於“so to speak”或“as if it were so,”與中文“如所云”或“正如所謂”一類句法相似。

例: He is, as it were, a walking dictionary.

他正如所謂活字典也。

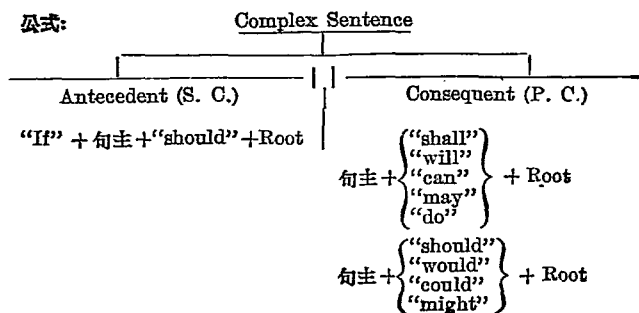
He is, as it were, an ass in the lion's skin.

他正如所謂驢蒙獅皮也。

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE FUTURE TENSE

假設語氣未來時候之用法

公式:



實在時候: Future (未來).

實在意義: A Stronger Degree of Uncertainty (極度之不確定).

用法要訣: 凡表示一個極不確定或毫無把握之未來動作或狀態, 用假設語氣未來時候。

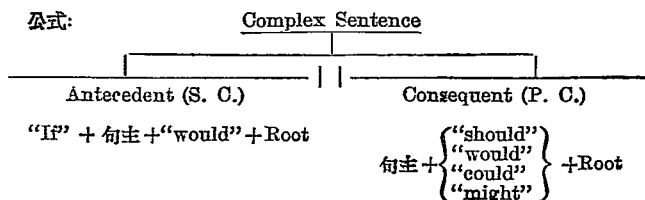
156. 假設語氣未來時候之意義——假設語氣未來時候, 係用以表示一個未來的極不確定之動作或狀態 (The Subjunctive Future expresses future uncertainty). 其意義和用法, 大致與假設語氣現在時候相同 (參閱 144 節); 不過其構造上多了一個 “should,” 益使不確定之程度更強耳。故關於未來的不確定之動作或狀態, 如所言無絲毫把握者或其事僅有萬一之可能性者, 以假設語氣未來時候表示之較爲貼切也。

至於結果子句中之云謂動詞, 或用 indicative form “shall,” “will,” “can,” “may,” 或 “do” + root, 或用 simple conditional form “should,” “would,” “could” 或 “might” + root, 視意義之需要與原因子句之關係而定之也。

例:	假設現在	假設未來
	I fear I shall fail. What shall I do if I fail?	I hope I shall succeed. But what should I do if I should fail?
	我恐落第。如果落第將如何呢。	我望及格。萬一落第將如何呢。
	I think it will rain. I shall not start, if it rain.	I don't think it will rain. I shall start even if it should rain.
	我想天將下雨。如果天雨我不動身矣。	我不想天將雨。即使萬一天雨我亦一準動身也。

釋例—觀於上例, 可知 subjunctive future 所包含的不確定程度較之 subjunctive present 所包含者強多也。如假設未來第一句中, 我望及格, 既自信有及格的把握, 當然減少落第之可能性。故落第一事僅萬一之事, 不如假設現在第一句中, 落第一事, 多少有幾分可能, 所謂越怕落第越要落第也。

157. 假設語氣之“would”——假設語氣未來時候，如係表示無意志未來，則其形式之造成，不論句主之人稱一概爲“should”+root. 如係表示意志未來，即動作受行爲者之約束者 (when willingness is implied and the agent determines the action), 則其形式一概爲“would”+root. “Would”如此用以表示意志未來，大都皆視之爲假設語氣過去時候，並不視其爲未來時候也。故在 consequent 中之云謂動詞，亦定爲 simple conditional form “should,” “would,” “could” 或 “might”+root, 茲附其公式於下



例: I could do so, if I *would* (do so).

如我願爲,我能爲之。

If you *would* only do your best, you would succeed.

只要你肯盡力,你即能成功。

158. 假設語氣“Would”之用途——假設語氣“would”有用途三:

1. “Would”含有反對或推翻現在事實者。

例: You could see it if you *would*.

如你願你即能見之也。

= You cannot see it because you will not.

2. “If you would”含有不能確定“you”願或不願之意義者,此即“if you will”之過去式也。

例: If you *would* grant my request (will grant or will not grant),
I should be greatly obliged to you.
如你肯允我所請我將感激萬分也。

3. “If you would” 作 “If you wish” 解者。

例: If you *would* (= wish to) be wise, learn hard.
如你欲智勤學可也。

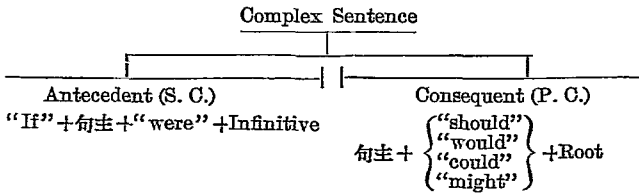
159. 假設語氣未來時候用於 “lest” 之後者——凡表示反面目的之附屬子句 (subordinate clause denoting negative purpose) 如爲繫合詞 “lest” 所接引者, 其云謂動詞必爲 “should” + root.

公式: “Lest... should” + Root = “That... {
may
might}
not” + Root

例: Be careful lest you *should* lose your purse.
宜當心否則恐失了你的錢袋也。
= Be careful that you may not lose your purse.
I could not tell my reason lest her brother *should* hear me.
我不能說明我的理由恐被她兄聽之也。
= I could not tell my reason that her brother might not hear me.

註: 目的子句如爲 “that,” “so that,” 或 “in order that” 所接引者, 現在時候, 應用 “may” + root; 過去時候, 應用 “might” + root. (參閱 147 節.)

160. “Were” + Infinitive 之意義 —— “Were” + infinitive” 一式 (“If he were to go,” “If I were to do”), 係表示純粹假設, 與未來之事實完全相違反者 (denoting pure supposition contrary to the future fact). 蓋 “were” 本爲 subjunctive past 表示 pure supposition, 今與 infinitive 相合, 卽具未來之意義矣 (參閱 67 節). 故 “were” + infinitive 之功用, 就在在現在設假定詞以反對未來之事實也. 至 consequent 中之云謂動詞, 亦爲 simple conditional form, 茲將其公式列下.



例: I am not going abroad, but if I *were to go*, I would go to England.

我擬不往外國去, 但如果去則往英國。

= I will not go to England, because I do not go abroad.

If the sun *were to rise* in the west, my resolution would be unchanged.

如果將來日出於西我的決心必不變更也。

= My resolution will be changed because the sun will not rise in the west.

凡動詞所表示之動作, 其實行期在未來者如 “tell,” “ask,” “come,” “go,” “become” 等, 大都用 “were” + infinitive 一式, 以表 pure supposition. 至於表示現在實在狀態之動詞如 “be,” “have,” “know,” “believe,” “need,” “want,” “possess,” “belong” 等, 其 pure supposition 之表示, 仍用假設語氣過去時候爲多也。

例: a. He will tell you if you *ask* him.

你如問他他必告你。

b. He will tell you if he *knows* it.

他如知之他必告你。

“Ask” 之實行係在未來而 “know” 則表示現在實在狀態。故以上二句, 如改爲完全假定, 其式則各異, 並不相同也。

a. He would tell you if you *were to ask* him.

= He will not tell you because you will not ask him.

b. He would tell you if he *knew* it.

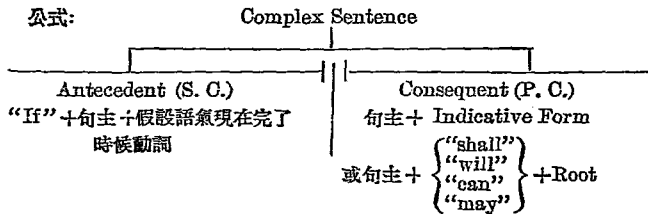
= He does not know it so he will not tell you.

但在日常談話文字中，“tell,” “ask” 等動詞，如欲表示完全假定，“were”+infinitive, subjunctive past, 或 subjunctive future 三種儘可任擇一種而用之，並無嚴格之限制，蓋三者所表示之意義，實無若何區別也。

例：
 He would tell you $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{if you } \textit{were to ask} \text{ him.} \quad (\text{supposition}) \\ \text{if you } \textit{asked} \text{ him.} \quad (\text{supposition}) \\ \text{if you } \textit{should ask} \text{ him.} \quad (\text{uncertainty}) \end{array} \right.$
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{If you } \textit{were to go} \text{ there,} \\ \text{If you } \textit{went} \text{ there,} \\ \text{If you } \textit{should go} \text{ there,} \end{array} \right\} \text{you would not be able to return.}$

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

假設語氣現在完了時候之用法



實在時候：Past (過去).

實在意義：Doubt or Uncertainty concerning a Completed Action (對於已經完了動作之疑惑或不能確定).

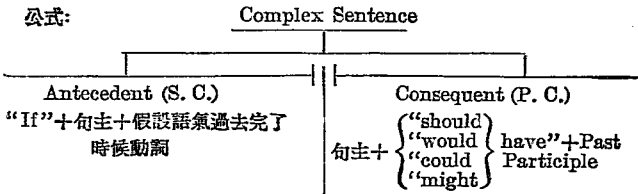
用法要訣：凡表示一個已經完了之動作，而現在對之，似感懷疑或不確定者，用假設語氣現在完了時候。

161. 假設語氣現在完了時候之意義——假設語氣現在完了時候，係用以表示一個已經完了之動作，而現在對之，感覺疑惑或不確定者 (The Subjunctive Present Perfect Tense is used when a completed action is spoken of as uncertain or doubtful). 此種關於過去動作之疑惑或不確定，其起因在於不明當時事實真相之所致也。但在現今，實彼語氣現在完了時候，常用以代之。

例：Do you think he has arrived? — I can't say. If he *have* (or *has*) *arrived*, he ought to send me word.
 你想他已到否。我不能答。倘使他已到應通知我。
 Tell him to return the book, if he *have* (or *has*) *done* with it.
 如他已將書閱畢囑他速行歸還也。

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE PAST PERFECT TENSE

假設語氣過去完了時候之用法



實在時候：Past (過去)。

實在意義：Denial of the Past (推翻或違反過去之事實)。

用法要訣：凡表示一個假定的動作或狀態恰與過去當時之事實相違反者，用假設語氣過去完了時候。

162. 假設語氣過去完了時候之意義——假設語氣過去完了時候之意義與用法，與假設語氣過去時候之意義與用法相同，亦係表示完全假定，與事實相反者也。其所異者，僅在時間耳。後者係反對或推翻現在之事實 (The Subjunctive Past denies the present fact)，而前者則反對或推翻過去之事實也 (The Subjunctive Past Perfect denies the past fact)，即在當時決無如句中所言之事也 (The Subjunctive Past Perfect expresses pure supposition and is contrary to the Past Perfect)。

結果子句中之云謂動詞，規定用 compound conditional form “should have,” “would have,” “could have” 或 “might have” + past participle，蓋 compound conditional form 本有反對過去事實之意，如此與原因子句中所述者正合也。

例:	假設過去	假設過去完了
{	<p>If he <i>were</i> diligent, he <i>could</i> pass the entrance examination.</p> <p>如他現在勤奮，入學試驗當能及格也。(假定)</p> <p>= As he is not diligent, he can not pass the entrance examination.</p> <p>因他不勤奮，入學試驗他不能及格也。(現在事實)</p>	<p>If he <i>had been</i> diligent, he <i>could have passed</i> the entrance examination.</p> <p>如果當時他稍為勤奮，入學試驗早已及格矣。(假定)</p> <p>= As he was not diligent, he could not pass the entrance examination.</p> <p>當時因他不勤奮，入學試驗他未能及格也。(過去事實)</p>
	<p>If I <i>had</i> money, I <i>would</i> help you.</p> <p>現在我如有錢，我決助你。(假定)</p> <p>= As I have no money, I can not help you.</p> <p>因現在我無錢，我不能助你。(現在事實)</p>	<p>If I <i>had had</i> money, I <i>would have helped</i> you.</p> <p>當時我如有錢，我早已助你矣。(假定)</p> <p>= As I had no money then, I could not help you.</p> <p>當時我因無錢，故未能助你也。(過去事實)</p>

註：結果子句中之云謂動詞，亦有不用 compound conditional form 者；如 antecedent 所言者爲過去而 consequent 所言者則爲現在，consequent 中之云謂動詞當然須用 simple conditional form 也。

例：If our forefathers *had not toiled* for us, we *should not be living* in such a happy land.

倘使祖先不爲我們而辛勞，我們恐不能久居於如斯之樂土也。
If the railways *had not been opened*, we *should be travelling* in jinrikishas still.

如果鐵道猶未開築，吾輩今日旅行仍須乘人力車也。

163. “Wish” 之後之假設語氣過去完了時候——假設語氣過去時候用於 “wish” 之後者，既爲表示現在難以達到之願望（參閱 153 節），則假設語氣過去完了時候用於 “wish” 之後者，當然表示過去之願望，在當時未曾達到也。

例：	假設過去	假設過去完了
I wish I <i>knew</i> English.	(假定願望)	I wish I <i>had learned</i> English.
	我願我懂英文。	(假定願望)
=I am sorry I do not know English.	(現在事實)	=I am sorry I did not learn English.
	惜乎現在我不懂英文。	(過去事實)
I wish I <i>were</i> there.	(假定願望)	I wish I <i>had been</i> there.
	我願我在彼處。	(假定願望)
=I am sorry I am not there.	(現在事實)	=I am sorry I was not there then.
	惜乎我不在彼處。	(過去事實)

164. “As if” 或 “As though” 之後之假設語氣過去完了時候——假設語氣過去時候用於 “as if” 或 “as though” 之後者，既係反對現在之事實（參閱 154 節），則假設語氣過去完了時候用於其後者，即係反對過去之事實也，即當時彷彿若有其事，而其實則並無此事也。

例： 假設過去

He looks as if he *were* ill.
他視之宛若若有病。
= He is not ill.
其實他現在並無病。

He treats me as if he *did* not
know me.
他待我似乎不識我也。
= He does know me.
其實他認識我也。

假設過去完了

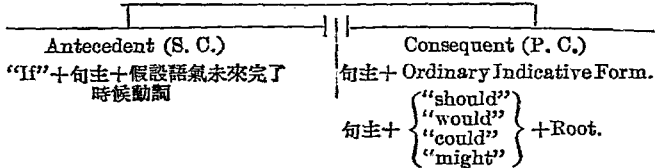
He looks as if he *had been*
ill for a long time.
他視之若已久病也。
= He has not been ill for
a long time.
其實他並未久病也。

He treats me as if he *had*
never *known* me.
他待我似乎素不識我也。
= He has known me.
其實他久已認識我矣。

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE FUTURE
PERFECT TENSE

假設語氣未來完了時候之用法

公式： Complex Sentence



實在時候： Past (過去).

實在意義： A Stronger Degree of Doubt or Uncertainty concerning a Completed Action (對於完了動作之極度疑惑或不確定).

用法要訣： 凡表示一個動作，預計已完了者，而對之似覺到極度疑惑或不確定者，用假設語氣未來完了時候.

165. 假設語氣未來完了時候之意義——假設語氣未來完了時候，係用以表示一個動作，預計已經完了而對之感到極度疑惑或不確定者也。其意義與假設語氣現在完了時候之意義相似，二者之關係，正如假設語氣未來時候對假設語氣現在時候之關係也（參閱 156 節）。至於假設語氣未來完了時候之實際用途，多半係指過去之事，其構造上之“*should*”非未來之標記，乃加強疑惑之程度耳。

例： I think he has not arrived yet, but if he *should have arrived*, tell him to come at once.

我想他尚未到也，但萬一他已到囑他立刻就來。

In case the place of meeting *should not have been appointed* yet, say that such and such a place would suit me best.

如果開會地點猶未擬定，請告以如此如此地點與我最宜也。

166. 假設語氣各時候用法之撮要——假設語氣表示疑惑或不確定抑或表示完全假定，須視其時候而定。茲將各時候之用法簡列於下：

- (1) 現在式（現在或現在完了）表示疑惑或不確定。

The Present Forms of Subjunctive Mood (Subjunctive Present or Subjunctive Present Perfect) denote Doubt or Uncertainty.

- (2) 過去式（過去或過去完了）表示完全假定而違反事實者。

The Past Forms of Subjunctive Mood (Subjunctive Past or Subjunctive Past Perfect) denote Pure Supposition contrary to the fact.

- (3) 未來式（未來或未來完了）表示極度之疑惑或不確定。

The Future Forms of Subjunctive Mood (Subjunctive Future or Subjunctive Future Perfect) denote a Stronger Degree of Doubt or Uncertainty with the addition of "should."

假設語氣各時候用法簡明表

To denote	Real Time	What Subjunctive Tense should be used	Formula	
			Antecedent	Consequent
Doubt or Uncertainty	Present Doubt or Uncertainty	Subjunctive Present	"If" + Root Verb	或 { "shall" "will" "can" "may" } + Root
	Past Doubt or Uncertainty concerning a Completed Action	Subjunctive Present or Future Perfect	"If" + { "have" + Past Participle "should have" + Past Participle }	或 { "shall" "will" "can" "may" } + Root 或 { "should" "would" "could" "might" } + Root
	Future A Stronger Degree of Doubt or Uncertainty	Subjunctive Future	"If" + "should" + Root	{ "shall" "will" "can" "may" } + Root 或 { "should" "would" "could" "might" } + Root

To denote	Real Time	What Subjunctive Tense should be used	Formula	
			Antecedent	Consequent
Pure Supposition	Present Denial of the Present	Subjunctive Past	"If" + Past Form	{ "should" "would" "could" "might" } + Root
	Past Denial of the Past	Subjunctive Past Perfect	"If" + "had" + Past Participle	{ "should" "would" "could" "might" } + "have" + Past Participle
	Future Denial of the Future	"Were" + Infinitive	"If" + "were" + Infinitive	{ "should" "would" "could" "might" } + Root

第十五章

TENSES OF THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

條件語氣之時候

167. 條件語氣之定義——條件語氣者，謂一個動詞所表示之動作或狀態，非絕對確定者，大概須視某種條件為轉移，條件然則然，條件否則否也。故條件語氣之動詞，常與假設語氣之動詞並用，二者相結合而成條件句也（參閱139節）。附屬子句（即 antecedent）之動詞為假設語氣，主要子句（即 consequent）之動詞為條件語氣，如是假設語氣動詞對條件語氣動詞表條件（condition），而條件語氣動詞

照假設語氣動詞所示之條件而定其所表示之動作之然否也。

- 例： a. I *will lend* you the money. (實敘語氣)
我決借你款項。
b. I *would lend* you the money if I had it. (條件語氣)
如果我有款我決借給你。

釋例一 (a) 句中 “will lend” 表示真實允諾 (true promise) 也，而 (b) 句中之 “would lend” 乃表示條件允諾 (conditional promise) 也，即款項能借給你與否，須視我錢之有無為定，如有可借，如無則當然的不能借也。但其實現在我並無錢，故現在當然不能借給你也。

- a. I *will buy* a motor car. (實敘語氣)
我擬購一輛汽車。
b. If I were rich, I *would buy* a motor car. (條件語氣)
倘若現在我係富有我擬購一輛汽車。

釋例一 (a) 句中之 “will buy” 係表真實決心 (true determination)，而 (b) 句中之 “would buy” 乃表示條件決心 (conditional determination)，其實現之與否，須視我是否富有也。其實現在我並非富有，故汽車亦未購置也。

168. 條件語氣之用途——條件語氣之唯一用途，係為呼應假設語氣動詞者。蓋假設語氣動詞既以表示完全假定 (pure supposition) 為主，故必需條件語氣動詞為之陪襯，俾意義上前後得以連貫也。所以在條件句中，antecedent 中之動詞，如係表示極度之疑惑或係表示完全假定，則 consequent 中之動詞，必為條件語氣也。但 antecedent 中所述者，如為疑惑或不確定之動作或狀態，則 consequent 中之動詞，大半仍為實敘語氣也。

- 例： If it rain tomorrow, I *will not go*. (疑惑或不確定)
如明日天雨我決不去。
“Will go” = indicative mood.
Suppose you should fail, what *would* you *do*? (極度疑惑或不確定)
萬一你落第你將如何呢。
“Would do” = conditional mood.
If I were you, I *would not do* it. (完全假定)
如果我是你我決不為此。
“Would do” = conditional mood.

169. 條件語氣時候之數目與構造——條件語氣之時候祇有二式，即“simple form”與“compound form”是也。至其構造，不論句主之人稱與數，概以“should,” “would,” “could,” 或“might”+root 而成“simple form;” “should have,” “would have,” “could have” 或“might have”+past participle 而成“compound form.” 茲將其公式分別列表於下。

Simple Form

	單 或 複
第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	“Should” “Would” “Could” “Might”

} +Root Verb

Compound Form

	單 或 複
第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	“Should” “Would” “Could” “Might”

} have”+Past Participle

註：條件語氣之“should,” “would,” 其意義與用法與實敘語氣之“shall,” “will” 相同，可參閱未來時候。至條件語氣之“could,” “might” 之意義與用法，可參閱可能語氣。

SIMPLE FORM

170. Conditional Simple Form 之分類——Conditional simple form 可分為二類，以“should,” “would”+root form 而成者曰“Conditional Potential.”

(a) CONDITIONAL FUTURE

171. Conditional Future 之公式——Conditional future 條件語氣未來時候與實敘語氣未來時候相同，亦分爲無意志未來與有意志未來二種。茲將其式列下。

1. 無意志未來 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{"I should"} \\ \text{"You would"} \\ \text{"He would"} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Root}$
2. 有意志未來 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a. 受發言者之約束} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{"I would"} \\ \text{"You should"} \\ \text{"He should"} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Root} \\ \text{b. 受行爲者之約束} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{"I would"} \\ \text{"You would"} \\ \text{"He would"} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Root} \end{array} \right.$

172. Conditional Future 之意義——Conditional future 所表示之動作或狀態，多爲現在之事（亦有爲未來之事者），蓋其名雖號未來，而其實則指現在時候也（亦有指未來時候者）。常與假設語氣過去時候相共，即 consequent 中動詞如爲 conditional future 則 antecedent 中動詞必爲 subjunctive past. 故 conditional future 之 "should" + root, "would" + root 實包含有推翻或違反現在事實之意在其中也。

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I should be} = \text{I am not} \\ \text{You would be} = \text{You are not} \\ \text{He would be} = \text{He is not} \end{array} \right\}$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I would go} = \text{I will or do not go} \\ \text{You would go} = \text{You will or do not go} \\ \text{He would go} = \text{He will or does not go} \end{array} \right\}$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{You should have} = \text{You shall not have} \\ \text{He should have} = \text{He shall not have} \end{array} \right\}$$

- 例: You *would like* him if you saw him.
 如你現在見他你定喜歡他。
 = You do not like him because you do not see him.
- If I were rich, I *would go* abroad.
 如現在我富有我決往外國。
 = I am not rich, so I do not go abroad.
- I *should be* happy if you came a little earlier.
 如你稍來早一些我必快樂。
 = I am not happy, because you do not come a little earlier.

無意志未來 (Non-Volitional):

- 例: If I tried, I *should succeed*.
 如我勉力我可成功。
 (=I do not succeed because I do not try.)
- If you tried, you *would succeed*.
 如你勉力你可成功。
 (=You do not succeed because you do not try.)
- If he tried, he *would succeed*.
 如他勉力他可成功。
 (=He does not succeed because he does not try.)

有意志未來 (Volitional):

- 例:
- If I had the money, $\begin{cases} \text{I would lend it to you.} \\ \text{You should have it.} \end{cases}$
 如現在我有錢我決借給你。
- (=I have no money, so $\begin{cases} \text{I cannot lend it to you.} \\ \text{you shall not have it.} \end{cases}$)
- If I had the money, $\begin{cases} \text{I would lend it to him.} \\ \text{he should have it.} \end{cases}$
 如現在我有錢我決借給他。
- (= I have no money, so $\begin{cases} \text{I cannot lend it to him.} \\ \text{he shall not have it.} \end{cases}$)

但 antecedent 中之動詞，如爲 subjunctive future 以表疑惑或不確定者，則 consequent 中之 conditional future “should” 或 “would” + root，並非推翻或違反現在之事實，乃表示未來或許有之事也 (contingent futurity).

例: He *would have to* give up his studies, if his eyes *should not get* better.

萬一他目不愈他或許要放棄學業也。

You *would have to leave* school, if you *would not amend* your conduct.

如果你不改正你的行爲你勢必要退學。

If you *would grant* my request, I *should esteem* it a great favor.

如你允我所請我則感德無涯矣。

(b) CONDITIONAL POTENTIAL

173. Conditional Potential 之意義 —— Conditional potential 所表示之動作或狀態，亦爲現在之事，因其實在時候，亦屬現在也。常與假設語氣過去時候或假設語氣未來時候 (大概爲意志未來) 相共，即 consequent 中之動詞，如爲 conditional potential，則 antecedent 中之動詞，必爲 subjunctive past or subjunctive future. 故 conditional potential “could” + root, “might” + root 亦含有推翻或違反現在事實之意在其中也。

I could do it = should be able to = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I can not do it.} \\ \text{I can, but do not do it.} \end{array} \right\}$
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{我不能爲之。} \\ \text{我能爲而未爲之。} \end{array} \right\}$

I might do it = should be permitted to = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I must not do it.} \\ \text{I do not or shall not do it.} \\ \text{I may, but do not do it.} \end{array} \right\}$
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{我不應爲之。} \\ \text{我未爲之。} \\ \text{我可爲而未爲之。} \end{array} \right\}$

- 例: You *could see* it if you would
 如你願看即能見之。
 (= You can not see it because you will not.)
 You *might help* me if you would.
 如你肯助你或能助我也。
 (= You do not help me because you will not.)
 I *could do* it if I were a rich man.
 我如富者我能爲之。
 (= I cannot do it because I am not rich.)

COMPOUND FORM

174. Conditional Compound Form 之分類 —— Conditional compound form 亦分爲二類, 以 “should have,” “would have” + past participle 而成者曰 Conditional Perfect; 以 “could have,” “might have” + past participle 而成者曰 Conditional Potential Perfect.

(a) CONDITIONAL PERFECT

175. Conditional Perfect 之意義 —— Conditional perfect 所表示之動作或狀態, 爲過去之事, 常與假設語氣過去完了時候相共, 卽 consequent 中之動詞, 如爲 conditional perfect, 則 antecedent 中之動詞必爲 subjunctive past perfect. 故 conditional perfect 實包含有推翻或違反過去事實之意在其中也。

{	I should have been = I was not
	You would have been = You were not
	He would have been = He was not
	I would have gone = I did not go
	You would have gone = You did not go
	He would have gone = He did not go

例: I *would have written* to you if I had known your address.

如我知道你的地址我早已寫信給你了。

(=I did not write to you, because I did not know your address.)

If the doctor *had come* earlier, the invalid would have been saved.

如果醫生早來一些病人當已得救矣。

If you *had come* a little later, I should have been out.

如你來稍晚些或早已出去矣。

(=You came just in time, and I was not out.)

(b) CONDITIONAL POTENTIAL PERFECT

176. Conditional Potential Perfect 之意義 —— Conditional potential perfect 所表示之動作或狀態，亦為過去之事，常與假設語氣過去完了時候相共，即 consequent 中之動詞，如為 conditional potential perfect，則 antecedent 中之動詞必為 subjunctive past perfect。故 conditional potential perfect 亦含有推翻或違反過去事實之意在其中也。

I could have done it = $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{I could not do it.} \\ \text{I could but did not do it.} \end{array} \right\}$

I might have done it = $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{I might not do it.} \\ \text{I might but did not do it.} \end{array} \right\}$

例: I *could have entered* the school last year if I had been here.

如果去年我在此我當能入學。

(=I could not enter the school because I was not here.)

He *might have been saved* if the doctor had been sent for sooner

如果醫生早請一些他或可得救也。

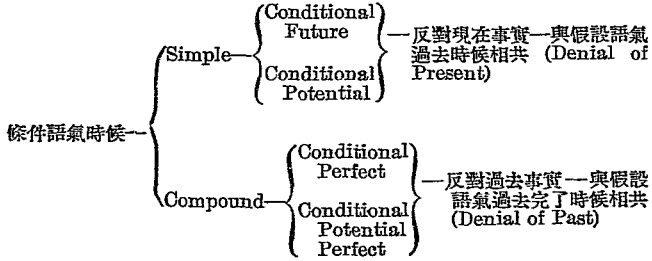
(=He was not saved because the doctor was sent for too late.)

I *might have gone* if I had wished to go

如我願去我可去。

(=I did not go though I might go.)

條件語氣各時候用法簡明表



第十六章

TENSES OF THE POTENTIAL MOOD

可能語氣之時候

177. 可能語氣之定義——凡以助動詞“may,”“can,”“must”加主要動詞作成之動詞，其語氣為可能語氣 (Potential Mood).

- 例: You *may* go out. [可能語氣表示 permission (許可)]
 你可出去。
- I *can* write an English letter. [可能語氣表示 ability (能力)]
 我能寫一封英文信。
- He *must* pay his debt. [可能語氣表示 necessity (必要)]
 他必須償付其所負之債。

178. “May,” “Can,” “Must” 之用法——“May,” “can,” “must” 三個助動詞，各有二種用法：

- (a) 與意志動詞 (Volitional Verbs or Verbs of Voluntary Actions) 相結合而表“許可” (may), “能力” (can), “必要” (must) 者, 爲第一種用法 (Primary Use).
- (b) 與無意志動詞 (Non-Volitional Verbs or Verbs of Involuntary Actions) 相結合而推斷某事爲“或可能” (may), “決非” (cannot), “定係” (must) 者, 爲第二種用法 (Secondary Use).

例:

第一種用法 (Primary Use)	第二種用法 (Secondary Use)
<p>a. { <i>May I try?</i> 我可試否. <i>No, you must not try</i> 你不許試.</p>	<p>a. { <i>Will he succeed?</i> 他可成功否. <i>He may succeed.</i> 他或可成功. <i>He may not fail.</i> 他不至失敗.</p>
<p>b. { <i>Can he try?</i> 他能試否, <i>No, he cannot try.</i> 他不能試.</p>	<p>h. { <i>Shall I succeed?</i> 我可成功否. <i>You must succeed.</i> 你必能成功. <i>You cannot fail.</i> 你斷不至失敗.</p>
<p>c. { <i>Must you try?</i> 你必須試否. <i>No, I need not try.</i> 我不必試,</p>	

註: 凡動詞其所表示之動作, 係受吾人意志之左右或支配者, 曰意志動詞。凡動詞其所表示之動作, 非吾人之力可以約束者, 或不受吾人意志之支配者, 曰無意志動詞。

例: Work play (意志動詞)
 Succeed fail (無意志動詞)

179. 可能語氣時候之數目與構造——可能語氣之時候，共有四個如下：

1. 可能現在時候 (Potential Present)
2. 可能過去時候 (Potential Past)
3. 可能現在完了時候 (Potential Present Perfect)
4. 可能過去完了時候 (Potential Past Perfect)

至於可能語氣各時候之構造，不論句主之數與人稱，概以助動詞“may,”“can”或“must”加 root verb 成可能現在；加“have”+ past participle 成可能現在完了。以其過去式“might,”“could”或“must”加 root verb 成可能過去；加“have”+ past participle 成可能過去完了。各時候之公式，茲特分列於下：

自 動 態 (Active Voice)

時候 句主之數	Potential Present	Potential Present Perfect
	單 或 複	單 或 複
第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	“May” “Can” “Must”	“May” “Cannot” “Must”
	} + Root Verb	} have” + Past Participle
時候 句主之數	Potential Past	Potential Past Perfect
	單 或 複	單 或 複
第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	“Might” “Could” (“Must”)	“Might” “Could” (“Must”)
	} + Root Verb	} have” + Past Participle

受動態 (Passive Voice)

時候 句主人稱	Potential Present	Potential Present Perfect
	單 或 複	單 或 複
第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	“May “Can “Must”	“Might “Could “Must”
	} be” + Past } Participle	} have been” + Past } Participle
時候 句主人稱	Potential Past	Potential Past Perfect
	單 或 複	單 或 複
第一人稱 第二人稱 第三人稱	“Might “Could “Must”	“Might “Could “Must”
	} be” + Past } Participle	} have been” + Past } Participle

註: “Must”有過去形式二,一爲“must,”一爲“had to.”(參191節.)

例: I *must* go. 我必須去. (現在)

I *had to* (must) go. 我必須去. (過去)

USES OF THE POTENTIAL PRESENT TENSE

可能語氣現在時候之用法

180. 可能語氣現在時候之意義——欲知可能語氣現在時候之意義,吾人須先明瞭,“may,”“can,”“must”三個助動詞之意義,因其即代表可能語氣現在時候之意義與用法也。

(1) May

181. “May”之第一種用法——“May”之第一種用法,計有二個意義:

(a) 許可 (Permission)

“May” 表示許可意義者，與意志動詞相結合，其“否定” (negative) 爲 “must not,” 表示 “禁止” (prohibition), 卽不許可也。

May = is or are permitted to....

Must not = is or are forbidden to....

例: *May I go out?*

我可出去否。

Yes, you *may go out.* (= You are permitted to go out.)

是，你可出去。

No, you *must not go* to such places. (= You are forbidden to go to such places.)

否，你不許到這類地方去。

The students of this school *may attend* the lecture free of charge (=The students are permitted to....)

此校學生准許免費聽講。

b. 讓步 (Concession)

“May” 表示 “讓步” 意義者，常與動詞 “say” 相共，其否定爲 “can not.”

例: He *may* be called a great man, but he *can not* be called a good man.

他稱爲偉人則可，稱爲善人則不可。

You *may say* that he was a good scholar, but you *can not call* him a good teacher.

你言他爲一學者固可，但你斷不能稱他爲良師也。

表示 “讓步” 之 “may,” 尙有習俗用法 (idiomatic use) 二則如下：

(1) May well = have good reason to... = 有理由。

例: He *may well* be proud of his son.
 (= He has good reason to be proud of his son.)

他誇其子實宜也 (= 實有可誇其子之理由也)。

You *may well* say that.

(= You have good reason to say that.)

你所言誠然 (= 所言洵屬有理)。

註: “May well” 中之 “well” 可作 “justly” 解。

如言過去, 可將 “may” 改為 “might,” 如 “You might well say that.”

(2) a. May as well...as.... = ...之可...與...之可...同, 即用於兩方俱可許之事。

例: You *may as well* call a cat a little tiger as call a tiger a big cat.

貓可稱為小虎, 猶如虎之可稱為大貓也。

(= 貓之可稱為小虎與虎之可稱為大貓同。)

In my mind, one *may as well* not know a thing at all, as know it but imperfectly.

余意以為與其對於一事而僅一知半解, 則寧以全然不知為愈。

(= 一知半解與全然不知同。)

b. Might as well...as.... = 若使...可以...則...亦可...矣, 其實即但...既不能...因而...亦自不能...

例: You *might as well* call a horse a fish as call a whale one.

鯨者可稱為魚, 則馬亦可稱為魚矣。

You *might as well* advise me to give up my fortune as my argument.

你勸我放棄主張, 猶如勸我放棄財產也。

(= 若使你勸我放棄主張則你亦可勸我放棄財產也。)

註: “May as well...as....” 與 “might as well...as....” 俱係表示現在之事, 第二式之 “might” 並非表過去也。

182. “May” 之第二種用法——“May” 用於第二種用法者, 與無意志動詞相結合, 其意義為 “可能推論” (possibility), 即在現在推斷現在某事為或可能也。其否定為 “may not,” 即現在某事或不可能也。

第二種用法之“may”如與“be”相結合，則表現在或可能或或不可能之事，故其意等於“perhaps is.”如與其他動詞相結合，則表未來或可能或或不可能之事，故其意等於“perhaps shall or will.”

May =	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{it is possible that ... is} \\ \text{perhaps is} \\ \text{perhaps shall or will} \end{array} \right.$
May not =	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{it is possible that ... is not} \\ \text{perhaps is not} \\ \text{perhaps shall or will not} \end{array} \right.$

- 例：
- | | |
|----|---|
| 現在 | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The report } \textit{may} \text{ or } \textit{may not be} \text{ true. (= Perhaps is or is not true.)} \\ \text{報告或真或不真.} \\ \text{He } \textit{may be} \text{ honest. (= Perhaps he is honest.)} \\ \text{他或許誠實.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| | |
| 未來 | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I } \textit{may meet} \text{ him tomorrow. (= Perhaps I shall meet him tomorrow.)} \\ \text{明日我或許遇見他.} \\ \text{He } \textit{may succeed. (= Perhaps he will succeed.)} \\ \text{他或可成功.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| | |

183. “May” 作假設語氣用法 (Subjunctive Use)——“May” 如用以代假設語氣現在時候者，其用法計有三種。(參閱 144 節.)

- (i) 用於由 “though,” “whether,” “however,” “whatever,” “whichever,” “whenever,” “wherever” 等繫合詞所接引之反對子句 (concessive clause) 中者。(參閱 146 節.)

- 例： *Though he may be a good scholar, he is certainly not a good teacher.*
他雖為一學者，然決非良師也。

Whether the report *may be* true or not, it does not concern us.

無論報告真實與否，不關我們事也

However rich a man *may be*, he ought not to be idle.

一人無論如何富有，不應懶惰。

Whoever *may say* so, it is not true.

不問誰為此言，要非真實。

Whatever you *may do*, you can not succeed without perseverance.

任你所爲何事，不忍耐不能成功也。

Whichever course you *may take*, you cannot escape some difficulty.

任你走何路，不能避免困難也。

Whenever I *may go*, I always find him at his books.

任我何時去，必見他正在用功。

Wherever you *may hide*, I will find you out.

任你隱匿何處，我必尋着你也。

- (2) 用於由“that,” “so that” 或 “in order that” 所接引之目的子句 (Final Clause of Purpose) 中者。(參閱 147 節.)

例: He works hard that he *may succeed*.

他勤於工作爲求成功也。

I work hard that my family *may live* in comfort.

我勤於工作俾家眷得以舒適活也。

- (3) 用於祈禱或願望句 (Optative Sentence) 中者。(參閱 149 節.)

例: *May you succeed!* = $\begin{cases} \text{I wish you may succeed!} \\ \text{I wish you success!} \\ \text{Success to you!} \end{cases}$

願你成功。

May you come back safe and sound.

願你安全而歸。

註: 下列之句，意義上微有不同，宜細辨之。

- a. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I hope you } \textit{will} \textit{ succeed} = \text{I think you will succeed.} \\ \text{我希望你可成功。} \quad \quad \quad \text{[表示確定 (certainty)]} \\ \text{I hope you } \textit{may} \textit{ succeed} = \text{I wish you may succeed.} \\ \text{但願你能成功。} \quad \quad \quad \text{[表示可能 (possibility)]} \end{array} \right.$
- b. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I wish he } \textit{would} \textit{ recover.} \\ \text{願他病即愈。} \quad \quad \quad \text{[表示確定 (certainty)]} \\ \text{I wish he } \textit{may} \textit{ recover.} \\ \text{但願他病能愈也。} \quad \quad \quad \text{[表示可能 (possibility)]} \end{array} \right.$

如以“may”與“will”相比較，“may”表示 possibility 而“will”則大概表示 certainty 也。

例: The ship *may* arrive later than the tenth, but she *will* certainly not arrive sooner.
船或於十號以後可到, 但決不至早到也。

(2) CAN

184. “Can”之第一種用法——“Can”用於第一種用法者, 其意義為“能力”(ability or capability), 與意志動詞相結合。至其否定, 則為“can not”表示“不能”(inability)。

$\begin{array}{l} \text{Can} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is or are able to} \\ \text{is or are capable of} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{Can not} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is or are unable to} \\ \text{is or are not capable of} \end{array} \right. \end{array}$

例: *Can you swim?*
你能游泳否。

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Yes, I } \textit{can} \textit{ swim.} \\ \text{然, 我能游泳。} \\ \text{No, I } \textit{can not} \textit{ swim.} \\ \text{否, 我不能游泳。} \end{array} \right.$

A man who *can not* read (is not able to read), *can not* hold (= is not capable of holding) such an important office.
凡不能閱讀者不能掌如此重要職務。

185. “Can”之第二種用法——“Can”用於第二種用法者，與無意志動詞相結合，其意義為“否定推論”(impossibility)，即在現在推斷現在某事為斷不可能，故只有否定“can not”之一式；蓋“can”在第二種用法中，不能有肯定之意義也(“Can” is not used in affirmative statements in the secondary use). 至欲表示肯定可能(possibility)，用“may”可也。

Can not = it is impossible that ...

例: The report *can not* be true. (= It is impossible that the report is true.)

報告斷非真實也。

As you work so hard, you *can not* fail. (= It is impossible that you will fail.)

你既如此用功，決不失敗也。

第二種用法之“can”如與“be”相結合，則表現在之事；如與其他動詞相結合，則表未來之事。

例:

現在 { It *can not* be true. (= It is impossible that it is true.)
此決非真實也。

未來 { You *can not* fail. (= It is impossible that you will fail.)
你斷不失敗。

186. 疑問句中之“Can”——第二用法之“can,”在疑問句中，雖為肯定式，然其實仍含有 impossibility 之意味；因此處之“can”係表示驚訝口吻 (wonder implying impossibility)，並非詢問能為某事乃謂某事豈能...或豈是...或豈可...等一類語氣也。

例: Can it be true? = { I wonder if it can be true.
此事豈真實耶。(It can not be true.)

{ *Can this be true?* (= Is it possible that this can be true?)
 (a) No, it can not be true. (= It is impossible that it can be true.)
 (b) I don't know. It may be true, or may not be true.
 (= It is possible that it may (or may not) be true.)

{ *Can he be ill when he runs about like that?*
 他如此東奔西跑豈能有病耶。
 He can not be ill as he runs about like that.
 他既東奔西跑決不至有病也。

{ *Can he know that I am here?*
 我在此他豈知之耶。
 No, he can not know it.
 否, 他決不知之。

187. “May not” 與 “Can not” 之比較 —— “May not” 與 “can not” 雖均係表示否定推論，然二者之意義則大有區別。“May not” 係表“或不可能”(possibility of the negative)，而“can not” 則表“斷不可能”(impossibility) 也。“May not” 所表者，不能十分斷定其為“必非”或“決不”；而“can not” 所表者，則可斷其為完全否定也。

例: { The report *may not* be true = It is possible that it is not true.
 報告或非真實。
 The report *can not* be true = It is impossible that it is true.
 報告斷非真實也。
 { He *may not* know that I am here = It is possible that he does not know that I am here.
 他或許不知我在此。
 He *can not* know that I am here = It is impossible that he knows that I am here.
 他決不知我在此也。

釋例—在上列二對例句中，每一句“not”與“be”或“know”相聯帶，即謂否定之中尚有幾分事實之可能也。每第二句“can”與“not”相聯帶而不涉及“be”或“know,” 即謂完全否定，事實斷無實現之可能也。

188. “Can”之習俗用法——“Can”一字，常見於習慣語 (idiomatic construction) 中者，其最著者，有下列二式：

(1) Can not...too = it is impossible to over.... = 不能以...為過分。

例: I *can not* thank you *too* much.

= I can not thank you enough.

或 = It is impossible to over thank you.

感謝不盡。

= 不能以感謝你為過分也。

We *can not* be *too* careful in this world; our best friends often deceive us.

= We can not be careful enough ...

或 = It is impossible to be over careful ...

吾人處世不厭注意之周詳，蓋莫逆之交亦往往見欺也。

= 注意無論如何周詳不為過分也。

(2) a. “Can not but”
+ Infinitive = { a. “Can not (choose) but”
 + Infinitive.
 或 = { b. “Can not (do anything)
 but” + Infinitive.
 = { a. 除...外無可擇之途也。
 或 = { b. 除...外無事能為也。
 = 不能不...也。

例: I *can not but* laugh to hear such a story.

= I can not (choose) but (to) laugh to hear such a story.

或 = I can not (do anything) but (to) laugh to hear such a story.

我聞如此之故事不能不失笑也。

b. $\frac{\text{“Can not help”} + \text{Gerund}}{= \text{“Can not”}} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{“avoid”} \\ \text{“help”} \\ \text{“forbear”} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Gerund}$

或 = $\text{“Can not”} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{keep} \\ \text{refrain} \\ \text{abstain} \end{array} \right\} \text{from”} + \text{Gerund}$

= 不禁...也。

例: *I can not help laughing to hear such a story.*

= *I can not refrain from laughing to hear such a story*

我聞如此之故事不禁失笑也。

(3) Must

189. “Must” 之第一種用法——“Must” 用於第一種用法者，計有三個意義：

(a) 必要 (Necessity)

“Must” 表示“必要”意義者，與意志動詞相結合，其否定為“need not,” 表示“不必要” (non-necessity); 並非“must not,” 因“must not” 乃“may” 之否定詞也。(參閱 181 節.)

$\text{Must} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is or are obliged to} \\ \text{is or are under the necessity of} \end{array} \right.$
$\text{Need not} = \text{not necessary for}$

例: *The leg must be cut off.*

腿必須割去。

I must go there.

我必須往彼處。

試比較以下之句:

<i>Can I go?</i>	No, you <i>can not go</i> .
我能去否.	否, 你不能去.
<i>May I go?</i>	No, you <i>must not go</i> .
我可去否.	否, 你不許去.
<i>Must I go?</i>	No, you <i>need not go</i> .
我必要去否	否, 你不必去.

(b) 義務或強迫 (Obligation or Compulsion)

例: *I must pay my debts.*

我必須償債.

You must remit the money within this month.

月內你必須解款

(c) 強力主張 (Insistence)

“Must” 表示強力主張者，謂堅持固有之成見而必須實行之也。

例: *I must know your reason.*

=I insist on knowing your reason.

我必欲明白你的理由.

I must positively see him.

=I insist on seeing him.

我定要見他

根據上述三種意義，“I must go.”一句，可作以下三種解法：

- (a) *I must go* = *It is necessary for me to go; It is necessary that I should go; I am under the necessity of going; I can not help going; I can not but go.*
- (b) *I must go* = *I am obliged to go; it is my bounden duty to go; I have to go.*
- (c) *I must go* = *I insist upon going; I will not stay.*

190. “Must” 之第二種用法 —— “Must” 用於第二種用法者，與無意志動詞相結合，其意義為“確定推論” (certainty)，即在現在推斷現在某事為定有或必是也。其否定為“can not.”

$$\text{Must} = \begin{cases} \text{certainly} \\ \text{it is certain that} \end{cases}$$

例: I *must be* true. (= It is certainly true.)

此必係真實者。

The report *can not be* true; it *must be* false. (=It is certain that
報告斷非真實，定係虛假也。 it is false.)

第二用法“must,” 如與“be”相結合，則表現在之事；如與其他動詞相結合，則表未來之事。

例: He *must be* honest. (=He is certainly honest.) (現在)

他必係誠實者。

He *must succeed* (=he will certainly succeed.) (未來)

他定可成功。

為求明瞭起見，茲特彙集“may,” “can,” “must” 之第一第二用法，各製成一表如下：

第一種用法 Primary Use

May	You may do it.....permission 許可
	You must not do it.....prohibition 不許
Can	I can do it.....ability 能
	I can not do it.....inability 不能
Must	You must do it.....necessity 必要
	You need not do it.....non-necessity 不必

第二種用法 Secondary Use (論推 Inference)

It may be true	}	{	possibility	或係
It may not be true				或非	
It must be true				certainty	必係
It can not be true.....				impossibility	決非

註：觀於上列第二表，可知“must”（表 certainty 必係）適與“can not”（表 impossibility 決非）相反；而處於此二者之間者為“may”或“may not”也（表 possibility 或是或非）。

USES OF THE POTENTIAL PAST TENSE

可能語氣過去時候之用法

191. 可能語氣過去時候之用法——可能語氣過去時候 (“might” + root, “could” + root, “must had to” + root) 可作以下三種語氣用法：

1. 作實敘語氣用法 (Indicative Use).
2. 作假設語氣用法 (Subjunctive Use).
3. 作條件語氣用法 (Conditional Use).

192. 作實敘語氣用法——作實敘語氣用者，“might,” “could,” “must” (“had to”) 即係 “may,” “can,” “must,” 之過去式。其意義與用法，與 “may,” “can,” “must” 之意義與用法相同，不過易現在時候為過去時候耳。

(a) 第一種用法 (Primary Use)

Could	=	was or were able to
Might	=	was or were permitted to
{ Must	}	{ insisted upon
{ (Had to)		{ was or were obliged to. . .
		{ was or were under the necessity of

“Must” 有過去式二，一爲其原形 “must,” 一爲 “had to.” 如表 “必要” (necessity) 或 “義務” (obligation), 則用 “had to;” 如表 “主張” (insistence) 或 “禁止” (prohibition), 則用 “must.”

“Could” 與 “must” (“had to”) 直接表示 “過去能力” 或 “過去必要” 固可, 如 “I *could* not go yesterday, for I *had to* do some important business,” 用於間接引用語中 (indirect narration) 以作 “can,” “must” 之過去時候亦可。惟 “might” 只能用於間接引用語中, 蓋吾人不能直接對人發表過去的 “許可,” 必須間接轉達之方可也。

例: { He said, “you *may* go.”
 { 他云, “你可去。”
 許可— { He said that I *might* go. (=He permitted me to go.)
 { 他云我可去。

I *could* not understand (= was unable to understand) what he said.

我不能明白他所言者。

能力— { I asked, “Can you swim?”
 { 我問你能游泳否。
 { I asked if he *could* swim. (=if he was able to swim.)
 { 我問他能否游泳。

I *had to* wait till he came.

我必須等到他來。

- 必要 { He said, "I *must* go to school."
他云, "我必須赴校."
He said that he *had to go to school*. (=It was necessary
for him to go.)
他云他必須赴校.
- 義務 { He said, "I *must* pay my debt."
他云我必須償債.
He said that he *had to pay* his debt. (=He was obliged to
pay his debt.)
他云他必須償債.
- 主張 { He said, "I *must* know your reason."
他云, "我定欲明白你的理由."
He said that he *must know* my reason. (= He insisted on
knowing my reason.)
他云他定欲明白我的理由.
- 禁止 { He said, "you *must* not drink."
他云, "你不許飲酒."
He said that I *must* not drink. (= He forbade me to
drink.)
他云我不許飲酒.

My father said that I *might* go to see the sports. But I *could* not go, for I *had to* prepare myself for the examination.

吾父云我可往觀運動會。但我不能去，因須預備受驗也。

(b) 第二種用法 (Secondary Use).

Could not	= it was impossible....
Might	= { it was possible that.... perhaps was.... perhaps should or would....
Must	= { certainly it was certain that....

可能現在 "may," "can," "must," 之第二種用法，係推斷現在之事。但可能過去 "might," "could," "must"

之第二種用法，不得用以推斷過去之事（參閱 195 節），只能用於間接引用句中，以作第二種用法 “may,” “can,” “must” 之過去時候也。“Must” 仍以原形爲過去，因其專重於推論，不能用 “had to” 也。

- 例： { He said, “The report *may or may not* be true.”
 { He said that the report *might or might not* be true. (= He said that perhaps the report was or was not true.)
 他謂報告或真或不真。
 { I thought, “It *can not* be true; it *must* be false.”
 { I thought it *could not* be true; it *must* be false. (= I thought it was impossible that it was true; it was certainly false.)
 余意此決非真實；定係虛偽者。

193. 作假設語氣用法——“Might,” “could,” “must” + root 作假設語氣用者，只能作假設過去時候用 (subjunctive past)，其實在意義爲假設現在不可能或未必有之事，且只能用於第一用法 (primary use) 不得用以推論某事也。“Must” 作假設過去用，其過去式應爲 “had to.” (參閱 150 節.)

If I might = I must not.

If I could = I can not.

If I had to = I need not.

- 例： If I *might give* an opinion, I should say....
 (= I *must not* (or have no right to) give an opinion.
 如果我可貢獻意見，我當主張....

- { I wish I *could fly*.
 (= I am sorry I am not fly.
 我願能飛。
 { I would fly to you, if I *could*.
 (= I do not fly to you because I can not.
 如我能飛，我決飛到你處也。

If I *had* to serve in the army, I would enter the cavalry.

= I need not serve in the army, so I do not enter the cavalry

如必須服役於軍，我決入騎兵隊。

194. 作條件語氣用法——“*Might*,” “*could*,” “*must*” + root 如作條件語氣用，必與假設過去相共，其實在意義乃違反現在之事實，用於第一種用法亦可，用於第二種用法亦可。惟“*must*”在第一種用法，易為“*should have to*”而在第二種用法仍為其原形“*must*”也。(參閱 173 節.)

(a) 第一種用法 (Primary Use)

I might do =	= { I must not do. (a) I may, but do not do. (b)
I should be permitted to do, if.... =	
I could do =	= { I can not do. (c) I can, but do not do. (d)
I should be able to do, if.... =	
I should have to do, if....	= I need not do. (e)

例:

- (a) You *might* go to the theatre, if you were older.
= You must not go to the theatre, because you are too young.
如你年齡稍長些，你就可往劇場。
- (b) I *might* go to the theatre, if I wanted to.
= I may (=am permitted to) go, but I do not want to.
如我欲意我就可往劇場。
- (c) You *could* see if you would.
= You can not see, because you will not.
如你要見即能見之。
- (d) I *could* enter the school if I tried.
= I can enter the school, but I do not try.
如經設法我能入此校。

(e) I *should have to* serve in the army, if I were not in a government school.

如果不在國立學校肄業，我必須服役於軍隊也。

註：“Might....”常作“could easily....”意義用。

例：You might help me if you would.

= You could easily help me if you would.

如你肯助我同極易事也。

(b) 第二用法 (Secondary Use)

I might succeed, if = I should perhaps succeed, if....

You could not fail, if.... = You would certainly not fail, if....

He must succeed, if ... = He would certainly succeed, if....

例：If I tried hard, I *might* (=should perhaps) *succeed*.

= I shall not succeed, because I do not try hard.

如我十分勉力我或可成功。

If you did your best, you *could not* (=would never) *fail*

= You will fail, because you do not do your best.

你如肯盡力，決不失敗也。

If he tried hard, he *must* (=would certainly) *succeed*.

= He will not succeed, because he does not try hard.

他如十分勉力，必可成功也。

USES OF THE POTENTIAL PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

可能語氣現在完了時候之用法

195. 可能語氣現在完了時候之用法——可能語氣現在完了時候 (“may have,” “can not have,” “must have” + past participle) 只能用於第二種用法以推斷過去之事 (past event) 或已經完了之動作 (completed action); 即就現在推斷過去之事為可能為斷不可能也 (present possibility of a past event). 猶如可能語氣現在時候 (“may,” “can,” “must” + root) 用以推斷現在或未來之事也。

例:

- “May”
- He *may have arrived* already.
 - =It is possible that he has arrived.
 - =Perhaps he arrived.
 - 或許他已到了
 - He *may not have arrived*.
 - =It is possible that he did not arrive.
 - 或許他猶未到也。
 - He *may have said so*.
 - =It is possible that he said so.
 - =Perhaps he said so.
 - 或許他曾說過。
 - He *may not have said so*.
 - =It is possible that he did not say so.
 - 他或許並未說過。
- “Can”
- Can he *have arrived*?
 - =Is it possible that he arrived?
 - 他豈已到耶。
 - He *cannot have arrived* yet.
 - =It is impossible that he arrived.
 - 他決未到也。
 - Can he *have done* such a thing?
 - =Is it possible that he did such a thing?
 - 他豈能為如此之事耶。
 - He *can not have done* such a thing.
 - =It is impossible that he did such a thing
 - 他斷不為如此之事也。
- “Must”
- He *must have arrived*.
 - =It is certain that he has arrived.
 - 他定已到了。
 - He *must have said so*.
 - It is certain that he said so.
 - 他必已說過。

USES OF THE POTENTIAL PAST PERFECT TENSE

可能語氣過去完了時候之用法

196. 可能語氣過去完了時候之用法——可能語氣過去完了時候 (“might have,” “could have,” “must have” + past participle) 亦可分作以下三種語氣用法：

1. 作實敘語氣用法 (Indicative Use).
2. 作假設語氣用法 (Subjunctive Use).
3. 作條件語氣用法 (Conditional Use).

197. 作實敘語氣用法——作實敘語氣用者，“might have,” “could have,” “must have” + past participle 只有第二種用法，用於間接引用語中，以作 “may have,” “can have,” “can not have,” “must have” + past participle 之過去時候。(參閱 192 節 b, 195 節.)

- 例：
- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| { | I said, “How <i>can I have done</i> wrong?” | |
| | 我說，“我豈已作了不當之行爲耶。” | |
| { | I wondered how I <i>could have done</i> wrong. (=I wondered how | |
| | 我深奇何以我竟作了不當之行爲. | it was possible that I had done wrong.) |
| { | He said, “you <i>may have done</i> wrong.” | |
| | 他說，“你恐已作了不當之行爲” | |
| { | He said that I <i>might have done</i> wrong. (=Perhaps I had done | |
| | 他說我已作了不當之行爲. | wrong.) |
| { | He said, “You <i>must have done</i> wrong.” | |
| | 他說，“你定已作了不當之行爲.” | |
| { | He said that I <i>must have done</i> wrong. (=It was certain that | |
| | 他說我定已作了不當之行爲. | I had done wrong.) |
| { | I thought, “I <i>can not have done</i> wrong.” | |
| | 我想，“我斷不至作了不當之行爲.” | |
| { | I thought that I <i>could not have done</i> wrong. (=It was impos- | |
| | 我想我斷不至作了不當之行爲. | sible that I had done wrong.) |

註：過去之事，現在對之，如無十分確實把握者，可用“could have”或“might have”+past participle 代“can have”或“may have”+past participle 以推斷之也。

例：I met him last summer — it *might* (may) *have been* about the middle of August.

去夏我遇見他——其時大約為八月中旬罷。

I am sure my husband had some money. I wonder what *he could* (can) *have done* with it.

我確知吾夫有錢。我深疑他究將該款作何用途呢。

198. 作假設語氣用法——可能語氣過去完了時候，如作假設語氣過去完了時候用，其實在意義為假設過去不可能或未必有之事，“must”之過去完了式應為“had had to.”（參閱 162 節。）

If I might have done so = I must not do so.

If I could have done so = I could not do so.

If I had had to do so = I had not to do so.

例：He would have come if he *might have done* so.
= He did not come, because he was not permitted
他如可來早已來了。

I would have helped you if I *could have done* so.
= I did not help you, because I could not.
我如能助你早已助你了。

If I *had had to do* it, I would have done it at once
= I had not to do it, so I did not do it.
我如必須為此我早已立即為之矣。

199. 作條件語氣用法——可能語氣過去完了時候作條件語氣用，必與假設過去完了相共，其實在意義為違反過去之事實也。用於第一種用法亦可，用於第二種用法亦可。“Must”在第一種用法，其形應為“should have had to;”而在第二種用法，仍為“must have”+past participle 也。（參閱 176 節。）

第一種用法 (Primary Use)

I might have done so, if	=	{ I might not do so. (a)
		{ I might, but did not do so. (b)
I could have done so, if	=	{ I could not do. (c)
		{ I could, but did not do so. (d)
I should have had to do so, if	=	I had not to do so. (e)

- 例: (a) You *might have gone* to the theatre, if you had been older.
= You were not permitted to go, because you were not old.
如果當時你稍長些, 你可往劇場。
- (b) I *might have gone* to the theatre, if I had wanted to.
= I was permitted to go, but did not want to.
如果當時我欲意, 我就可往劇場。
- (c) I *could have entered* the school, if I had been here.
= I could not enter, because I was not here.
如果當時我在此, 我能入此校。
- (d) I *could have entered* the school, if I had wanted to.
= I could enter, but I did not want to.
如果當時我欲意, 我就能入此校。
- (e) If I *had not entered* the school, I should have had to serve in the army.
= I had not to serve, because I entered the school.
如果當時我不入此校, 我必須服役於軍隊。

註: “Might have....” 常作 “could easily have....” 用, 不過如此用法, 含有 (a) 遺憾 (regret) 或 (b) 責難 (reproach) 之意味耳。

- 例: (a) I *might have made* myself a rich man, if I had wanted to.
= I could easily have made myself a rich man, if I had wanted to; I am sorry I did not.
如果當時我欲意, 成爲富翁固易事也。
- (b) He *might at least have come* to say good-bye.
= He did not do what he could easily have done.
當時他固應來辭別也。

第二種用法 (Secondary Use)

I might have succeeded, if

= I should perhaps have succeeded, if . . .

You could not have failed, if

= You would certainly not have failed, if

He must have succeeded, if

= He would certainly have succeeded, if

例: I *might* (= should perhaps) *have succeeded*, if I had worked harder.

= I did not succeed, but it might perhaps have been possible for me to succeed if I had worked harder.

如果當時我稍勤於工作，我或已成功矣。

You *could* (= would certainly) *not have failed*, if you had worked harder.

= You failed, and it would have been impossible for you to fail if you had worked harder.

如果當時你稍勤於工作，你斷不致失敗也。

He *must* (would certainly) *have succeeded* if he had worked harder.

= He did not succeed, but he would have certainly succeeded if he worked harder.

如果當時他稍勤於工作，他必告成功矣。

WANTING PARTS OF "MAY," "CAN," "MUST"

("MAY," "CAN," "MUST" 時候上之欠缺部分)

200. "May," "Can," "Must" 欠缺時候之補充——
 "May," "can," "must" 只有現在時候與過去時候 (might, could, must) 二式，因此三個助動詞並無不定詞 (infinitive) 或分詞 (participle)，故不能與其他助動詞相結合以構成未來或完了時候。至於可能語氣現在完了時候或

過去完了時候，係用 “may,” “can,” “must” 而做成之可能語氣完了時候，並非 “may,” “can,” “must” 之完了時候也。

例：可能現在完了——He *can not have done it.*
 (= It is impossible that he did it.)
 “Can” 之現在完了——He *has not been able to do so.*
 (= He has not succeeded in doing so.)

“May,” “can,” “must” 既無不定詞或分詞可與其他助動詞相結合，所以其欠缺各時候，必須以同一意義之其他方式補足之也。茲將補充 “may,” “can,” “must” 之方式以及各時候之公式分別於下：

“Be able to”	=	“can”
“Be permitted to”	=	“may”
“Have to”	=	“must”

實 敘 語 氣

時 候	Can	Must	May
現 在	can (或 be able to)	must (或 have to)	may (或 be permitted to)
過 去	could (或 ^{was} were able to)	had to	might (或 ^{was} were permitted to)
未 來	shall or will be able to	shall or will have to	shall } be permitted to will }
現在完了	have been able to	have had to	have been permitted to
過去完了	had been able to	had had to	had been permitted to
未來完了	shall } have been able to will }	shall } have had to will }	shall } have been permitted to will }

假 設 語 氣

時 候	Can	Must
現 在	If ... can (或 be able to)	If ... must (或 have to)
過 去	If ... could (或 were able to)	If ... had to
未 來	If ... should be able to	If ... should have to
現在完了	If ... have been able to	If ... have had to
過去完了	If ... had been able to	If .. had had to
未來完了	If ... should have been able to	If ... should have had to

例: Are you coming tomorrow? No, I *shall not be able* to come tomorrow.

明日你來否。否，明日我不能來。

(“shall not be able to come”=shall+not+can+come)

Have you spoken to the principal? No, I *have not been able* to speak to him.

你已與校長談話否。否，我不能與他談話也。

(“have not been able to speak”=have+not+can+speak)

I think I *shall be able* to come tomorrow. If I *should not be able* to come, I will send word to that effect.

我想明日我能來。萬一不能來當預為知照也。

If he *had been able* to come, he would have come.

如果他當時能來，早已來了。

I thought I *should be able* to come.

我想能來。

(間接引用語 what was then future)

How long shall I have to (= must I) wait?

我必須候幾久呢。

You *will not have to* (= need not) wait very long.

你不必候多久。

I was obliged to stay at home all day yesterday, for I *had to* prepare myself for the examination.

昨日終日我不得不在家，因我須預備受驗也。

If I *should have to* do either, I would do this

如果兩者俱必為，我寧為此也。

201. 可能語氣之“Can”——“Can”亦能與可能助動詞 (potential auxiliaries) “may,” “can,” “must” 相結合，但祇能有第二種用法以推斷現在或過去之事也。

With “May” denoting Possibility

(現在)——I *may be able* to go. (= Perhaps I can go.)

(現在完了)——I *may have been able* to go. (= Perhaps I was able to go.)

(過去)——I *might be able* to go. (= Perhaps I should be able to go.)

(過去完了)——I *might have been able* to go. (= Perhaps I could have gone.)

With “Can not” denoting Impossibility.

(現在)——He *can not be able* to go. (= It is impossible that he is able to go.)

(現在完了)——He *can not have been able* to go. (= It is impossible that he was able to go.)

With “Must” denoting Certainty.

(現在)——He *must be able* to go. (= It is certain that he is able to go.)

(現在完了)——He *must have been able* to go. (= It is certain that he was able to go.)

例: Can you come tomorrow? I am very busy, but I *may be able* to come in the evening. (= Perhaps I shall be able to come in the evening.)

明日你能來否。我甚忙，但晚上或許能來。

You *might be able* to see him, if you went in the morning.

(= Perhaps you would be able to see him.)

如你早上去，或能見他也。

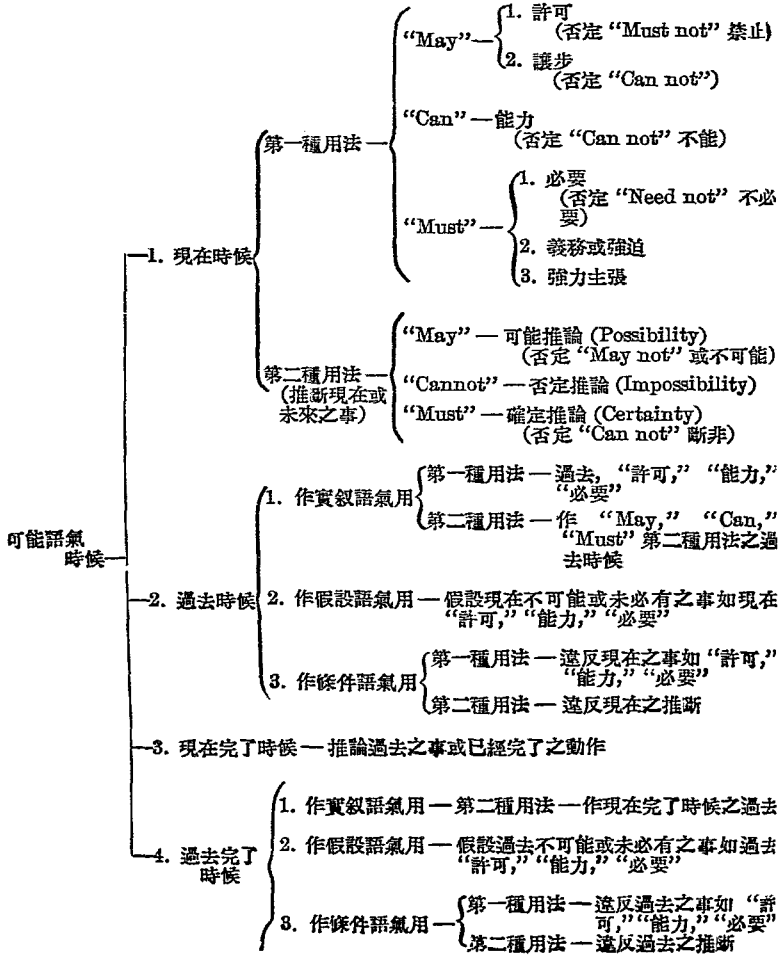
Can he speak English? He *must be able* to speak it, for he has been studying it for upwards of five years.

他能說英語乎。必能也，因他研習英文已五年以上矣。

He *can not be able* to speak it yet, for he began it only very lately. (= It is impossible that he can speak it.)

他決不能說英語，因他近來始習之也。

可能語氣各時候用法簡表



第十七章

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

時候前後之呼應

202. 時候前後之呼應之意義——時候前後呼應者，請在一句複雜句 (complex sentence) 中，其附屬子句中動詞之時候必須與主要子句動詞之時候相符合 (The Tense of the Verb in the Subordinate Clause must be consistent with the Tense of the Verb in the Principal Clause); 如不符合，則全句前後意義必致矛盾也。

例: He saw that the dog is barking (誤)
他看見此犬現在方狂吠。

釋例—在上句中，“He saw” 係主要子句，“the dog is barking” 係附屬子句，二者由繫合詞 “that” 所聯而成 complex sentence. “Saw” 為過去時候動詞，故其所言者為過去之事; “is barking” 為現在時候動詞，故其所言者為現在之事。如將過去之 “saw” 與現在之 “is barking,” 強相結合，則全句之意，必不能符合，緣吾人在過去的時候，斷不能見現在所發生之事也。設或在各子句中再加表適當時間之疏狀詞，則意義上之矛盾益為明顯也。

He saw yesterday that the dog is barking now.
昨日他見犬現在方狂吠。

釋例—此句不合論理明甚，故應改正如下以求意義前後之符合也。
He saw that the dog was barking.

203. 時候呼應之二規則——欲使複雜句中附屬子句動詞之時候與主要子句動詞之時候相呼應，必須嚴遵以下二個規則:

Rule I.—主要子句之動詞如為現在，現在完了，或未來時候，則附屬子句之動詞為任何時候均可 (If the Verb in the Principal Clause is in the Present, the Present Perfect, or the Future Tense, the Verb in the Subordinate Clause may be of any tense whatever).

主要子句	附屬子句 (任何時候動詞)	
(現在,現在完了,或未來) 時候動詞	that he paints pictures.	}
	that he is painting a picture.	
	that he has painted a picture.	
	that he has been painting a picture.	
I have heard or I know or I shall know	that he painted a picture.	}
	that he was painting a picture.	
	that he had painted a picture.	
	that he had been painting a picture.	
	that he will paint a picture.	}
	that he will be painting a picture.	
	that he will have painted a picture.	
	that he will have been painting a picture.	} 四個未來時候

Rule II. — 主要子句之動詞如爲過去時候,則附屬子句之動詞必須爲過去時候 (If the Verb in the Principal Clause is in the Past Tense, the Verb in the Subordinate Clause must be in the Past Tense).

例: 主要子句 (過去時候動詞)	附屬子句 (任何過去式動詞)
I knew	that he painted pictures.
	that he was painting a picture
	that he had painted a picture.
	that he had been painting a picture.
	that he had painted a picture.
	that he had been painting a picture.
	that he had painted a picture.
	that he had been painting a picture.
	that he would paint a picture.
	that he would be painting a picture.
that he would have painted a picture.	
	that he would have been painting a picture.

註：觀於 Rule I., Rule II. 二例，可知主要子句動詞時候如易現在（或現在完了或未來）為過去，則附屬子句動詞時候，發生以下四種變化。

1. Present	變為	Past
2. Past	變為	Past Perfect
3. Past Perfect	仍為	Past Perfect
4. Will	變為	Would

附屬子句中動詞如有“shall,” “can,” “may”或“must,”若主要子句動詞為過去時候，亦應改為“should,” “might,” “could”或“must”（或“had to”）。

- 例：
- | | |
|---|--|
| { | He is doubtful if he shall succeed, but he says he will do his best. |
| | 他能成功與否深感懷疑，但他說他決盡力也。 |
| { | He <i>was</i> doubtful if he <i>should</i> succeed, but he said he <i>would</i> do his best. |
| | |
| { | He says he can not play with me, for he must learn his lessons. |
| | 他說他不能同我遊戲因其須學習功課也。 |
| { | He <i>said</i> he <i>could</i> not play with me for he <i>had to</i> learn his lessons. |
| | |
| { | I fear that he may have missed the train. |
| | 我恐他或已趕不及火車矣。 |
| { | I <i>feared</i> that he <i>might</i> have missed the train. |
| | |

204. 第二規則之例外 —— 附屬子句動詞，如係表示一般真理 (universal truth) 或習慣動作 (habitual action)，雖主要子句動詞為過去時候，仍應為現在時候也。（參閱 42 節。）

例：	主要子句 (過去時候)	附屬子句 (現在時候)
	They <i>learned</i> at school.	that honesty is the best policy.
	他們在校已深知	、 誠實乃善策也

Formerly people <i>did</i> not <i>know</i> that the earth <i>moves</i> round the sun.	
以前人不知	地球繞日而轉。
He <i>was</i> glad to hear.	that his son <i>is</i> industrious.
他樂聞	其子甚勤奮。
I <i>told</i> him	that I <i>take</i> a walk every afternoon.
我告他	我於每日午後散步一次。

205. 目的子句時候之呼應——表示目的之子句(Clause of Purpose), 其動詞之時候, 亦須遵守下列二個規則, 以期與主要子句動詞之時候相符合也。

Rule I. — 主要子句之動詞如爲現在或未來時候, 則目的子句之動詞必爲“may” + root.

Rule II. — 主要子句之動詞如爲過去時候, 則目的子句之動詞必爲“might” + root.

例:	主要子句 (任何現在或未來時候)	目的子句 (“May” + Root)
	He comes	} that he <i>may</i> see me.
	He is coming	
	He has come	
	He has been coming	
	He will come	
	He will be coming	
	He will have come	
	He will have been coming	
	主要子句 (任何過去時候)	目的子句 (“Might” + Root)
	He came	} that he <i>might</i> see me.
	He was coming	
	He had come	
	He had been coming	

註: 以“lest”所接引之反面目的子句, 不問主要子句動詞爲何種時候, 其動詞必爲“should” + root. (參閱 147 節.)

例:	主要子句	目的子句
現在	He goes,	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me. or that he may not see me.
未來	He will go,	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me. or that he may not see me.
過去	He went	{ lest he <i>should</i> see me. or that he might not see me).

206. 比較子句時候之呼應 —— 以聚合詞 “than” 或 “as” 所接引之比較子句 (Clause of Comparison), 其動詞之時候, 可依其自身之意義而定, 並不受主要子句動詞時候之限制也。

例:	主要子句 (任何時候動詞)	比較子句 (任何時候動詞)
	He likes you better	than he liked me.
	He liked you better	than he likes me.
	He will like you better	than he has liked me.
	He has liked you better.	than he liked me.
	He liked you better	than he likes me.

註: 比較子句如由 “as well as” 所接引者, 206 節所述之原則亦適用之也。

例:	主要子句 (任何時候動詞)	比較子句 (任何時候動詞)
	He liked you as well as he likes me.	
	He likes you as well as he liked me.	
	He will like you as well as he liked me.	
	He has liked you as well as he liked me.	

註: “Than” 或 “as well as” 所接引之比較子句, 其動詞如省略而不表出者, 則省略動詞之時候必與主要子句動詞之時候相同。

例:	主要子句	比較子句
	He liked you better	than me (than he liked me).
	He will like you as well as	me (as well as he will like me).

第十八章

TENSE IN INDIRECT NARRATION

間接引用語中之時候

207. 引用語之定義——引用他人之言語於文中謂之引用語。介紹引用語之動詞謂之傳報動詞或紹介動詞 (Reporting or Introductory Verb)。傳報動詞所介紹之語謂之傳報語 (Reported Speech) 卽引用語也。

例:	紹介動詞	引用語
	Reporting Verb	Reported Speech.
	He said,	"I am a student."
	他說,	"我學生也。"
	He said that	he was a student.
	他說	他乃學生也。

208. 引用語之種類——引用語分二種：凡引用他人原文不易其一字者謂之直接引用語 (Direct Narration)。凡僅引用他人言語之實質或意思，不用其原文者，謂之間接引用語 (Indirect Narration)。

例:	He said, "I am busy."	(直接引用語)
	他說, "我殊忙。"	
	He said that he was busy.	(間接引用語)
	他說他殊忙也。	

釋例——在第一句中 "I am busy" 一語，卽係他當時所言之者，今將一字未易之原文引用之，故謂之直接引用語。第二句中之 "he was busy" 一語，並非他當時所言之原文，係根據他當時所言之意而引用之，故謂之間接引用語。

209. 引用語中動詞時候之更易——直接引用語如改爲間接引用語，除代名詞必須更改外，動詞之時候，亦須更易之，方符時候前後呼應之規例也。（參閱 203 節。）

更易動詞時候之規則有二。

Rule I.—傳報或紹介動詞如爲“現在，”“現在完了，”或“未來”時候，則引用語中動詞之時候毋須更易 (If the Reporting or Introductory Verb is in the Present, Present Perfect, or Future Tense, the Tense of the Verb in the Reported Speech is not changed at all).

Reporting Verb

例：

(現在時候)

直接——He says, "I *have done* it."

間接——He says he *has done* it.

(現在完了時候)

直接——He has said, "I *will do* it."

間接——He has said that he *will do* it.

(未來時候)

直接——He will say, "The boy *was* lazy."

間接——He will say that the boy *was* lazy.

Rule II.—傳報或紹介動詞如爲過去時候則引用語中動詞之時候必須改爲過去式時候 (If the Reporting or Introductory Verb is in the Past Tense, the Tense of the Verb in the Reported Speech must be changed to one or other of the four forms of the Past Tense).

Present	改 爲	Past.
Present Perfect	” ”	Past Perfect.
Present Progressive	” ”	Past Progressive.
Past	” ”	Past Perfect or Past.

Past Progressive	改 爲	Past Perfect Progressive
Shall	” ”	Should
Will	” ”	Would
May	” ”	Might
Can	” ”	Could
Must (必要)	” ”	Had to
Must (命令)	仍 爲	Must

例: Reporting Verb

(過去時候)

直接——He said, “*I am wrong.*”間接——He said that he *was* wrong.直接——The boy said, “*I have learned* my lesson.”間接——The boy said that he *had learned* his lesson.直接——He said, “*The man is coming.*”間接——He said that the man *was* coming.直接——He said, “*I never saw* him.”間接——He said that he *had never seen* him.直接——He said, “*The rain was falling* yesterday.”間接——He said that the rain *had been falling* the day before.直接——He said, “*The man shall come.*”間接——He said that the man *should come.*直接——He said, “*The man will come.*”間接——He said that the man *would come.*直接——He said, “*The man may come.*”間接——He said that the man *might come.*直接——He said, “*The man can come.*”間接——He said that the man *could come.*”直接——He said, “*I must learn* my lesson.”間接——He said that he *had to learn* his lesson.直接——He said to me, “*You must learn* your lesson.”間接——He said that I *must learn* my lesson.

210. 引用語中之疏狀詞或其他關係詞之更易——直接引用語改爲間接引用語時，其動詞之時候，依據第二規則必須改現在爲過去，則句中有關於近的一方面之疏狀詞或形容詞 (adjective)，亦應改爲遠的一方面 (An Adverb or an Adjective expressing Nearness should be also changed into One expressing Distance, when the Present Tense changed into the Past according to Rule II.)，俾與全句意義相符合。

Now	改爲	Then
This	” ”	This
These	” ”	Those
Here	” ”	There
Hence	” ”	Thence
Today	” ”	That day
Tomorrow	” ”	{The next day. {The following day.
Yesterday	” ”	{The day before. {The previous day.
Ago	” ”	Before.
Last week	” ”	The previous week.
Next month	” ”	The following month.
Last night	” ”	{The night before. {The previous night.

例：直接——He said, "My father returned *last* night."

間接——He said that his father had returned the *previous* night.

直接——He said, "It is eight o'clock *now*."

間接——He said that it was eight o'clock *then*.

直接——He said, "I have seen *this* man."

- 間接——He said that he had seen *that* man.
 直接——He said, "I saw this man long *ago*.
 間接——He said that he had seen that man long *before*.
 直接——He said, "I have been *here* several times."
 間接——He said that he had been *there* several times.

直接引用語改爲間接引用語時，其中如有表時間，或地點，或其他之關係詞，雖大都將此類詞改近爲遠，然亦並非絕對必要之舉，因有完全不改者，亦有改遠爲近者。總之須視傳報者 (reporter) 當其發言時，與直接引用語 (reported speech) 中之時間或地點關係如何耳。如同日傳報，則原文中之 "today," 無須改爲 "that day;" 如同處傳報，則原文中之 "here" 無須改爲 "there" 是也。

例: (a) 直接——He said, "The king will come tonight."

如同日將上句改爲間接，則間接引用語應如下式：

間接——He said that the king would come tonight.

如在後一日將上句改爲間接，應如下式：

間接——He said that the king would come last night.

如在數日後將上句改爲間接，應如下式：

間接——He said that the king would come that night.

(b) 直接——He said, "I paid a large sum for those pictures."

如畫在傳報者之傍，則間接引用語，應如下式：

間接——He said that he paid a large sum for these pictures.

如畫距傳報者遠，則間接引用語如下式：

間接——He said that he paid a large sum for those pictures.

(c) 直接——He said, "There will be a public meeting in this hall tomorrow at four o'clock"

上句如在同日同處傳報之者，則間接引用語如下式：

間接——He said that these would be a public meeting in
this hall tomorrow at four o'clock.

如在同日他處傳報之者，應如下式：

間接——He said that these would be a public meeting in
that hall tomorrow at four o'clock.

如在同處後一日傳報之者，應如下式：

間接——He said that these would be a public meeting in
this hall today at four o'clock.

如在他處前後數日傳報之者，應如下式：

間接——He said that these would be a public meeting in
that hall next day at four o'clock.



(44023•4)

英語動詞時候用法

How to Use the Tenses
of Verbs

版權所有翻印必究

編 著 者 陳 亞 漁

發 行 人 王 雲 五
上 海 河 南 路

印 刷 所 商 務 印 書 館
上 海 河 南 路

發 行 所 商 務 印 書 館
上 海 及 各 埠

定價國幣陸角伍分 外埠酌加運費

中華民國二十四年十二月初版

• C 五 四 三 二 一

(本書校對者錢兆駭)

